Morte Arthure.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
Monte Arthune,
or
The Death of Arthur.

EDITED FROM
ROBERT THORNTON'S MS.
IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,
BY
EDMUND BROCK.

[A New Edition, 1871.]

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCCLXV.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PREFACE</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON THE METRE OF THE POEM</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTES</td>
<td>xiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MORTE ARTHURE</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF NAMES</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLOSSARIAL INDEX</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PREFACE.

The present version of the Morte Arthure or Death of Arthur is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

Morte Arthure was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order; the freshness of his descriptions of scenery\(^1\), the touching pathos of some of his passages\(^2\), and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others\(^3\), mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Awdelay, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

\(^1\) See ll. 920—932, 2506—2512.
\(^2\) See ll. 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971.
\(^3\) See ll. 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000.
The poem is printed from the Thornton MS., in the library of Lincoln Cathedral; no other copy is known. The MS. is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin; a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed. Halliwell (Camden Soc. 1844). The MS. is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of Morte Arthure we find, "*R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*" Thornton was "a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved an instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439."¹

*Morte Arthure* was first printed in 1847, by J. O. Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev. George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects; the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS. at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful; the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new; a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes added.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev. W. W. Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E. B.

¹ From Mr Perry's Preface, p. vii.
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

The metre in which the "Morte Arthure" is written may best be understood by comparing it with "Piers Plowman," the accentuation and swing of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of "Piers Plowman") where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two sections, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the metrical point or pause, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus:

"Schelde vs furo schamesdede and synfulle werkes;"

or else by printing the lines thus:

"Schelde vs furo schamesdede,
And synfulle werkes."

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line; and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has
once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur.

To begin, then; consider the line—

"Ac Lucifer lowest 'lith of hem alle."

_Piers Plowman_ (ed Skeat), B. i. 124.

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly-accented\(^1\) (or loud) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a _single_ unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean _two_ unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on; we may represent the above line by the scheme,

\[1 \ast 2 \ast 1 : \ast 2 \ast 1;\]

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents; (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the _rime-letter_; and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The _rime-letters_ may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of _single_ letters, or of such combinations as _sc, bl, tr_, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they _are_ so; they need not be the _same_ vowels, and, in practice, are generally _different._

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does _not_ begin with the _rime-letter_. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

"Here\(^2\) messe and here matynes ; and many of here oxres."

_Piers Plowman_, B. Prol. 97.

---

\(^1\) I use the term _strongly-accented_ advisedly, all accents not being _equal_. Thus, in the line—

"On the oat-grass and the sword-grass, and the bulrush in the pool,"

the syllables marked are _strongly-accented._

\(^2\) "Hir [or here = their] is a monosyllable." _-Guest on English Rhythms;_ ed. 1838, p. 34.
We have here the arrangement

\[1 * 2 * 1 : 1 * 3 * 1\]

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section; and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to three.

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse; we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as four short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that is accented slightly) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm; for it is one addressed to the ear only, and not to the eye. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

"Fáyteden for here fôde · fou’ten atte álë;"

Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 42.

which may be denoted by

\[* 4 * 1 : * 3 * 1\]

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet; it may suffice to say that the general effect of the metre is dactylic, supposing the term dactyl to be capable of application to an English foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

"I lóked on my lóft half · as þe lády me taughte,
And was wár of a wómman · wórthelî yelôthed,
Púrîlled with þêlure · þê fînest vpon ðîrðe,
Y-cróûned with a córone · þê kîng hath non bêtter ;
Fêtîslich hîr fîngres · were frêtêd with gölde wyre."

Piers Plowman, B. ii. 7.
Analysis:  

\[
\begin{align*}
1 & \ast 3 \ast 1 : 2 \ast 2 \ast 1 \\
2 & \ast 2 \ast 1 : \ast 3 \ast 1 \\
\ast & 3 \ast 1 : 1 \ast 3 \ast 1 \\
1 & \ast 3 \ast 1 : 1 \ast 2 \ast 1 \\
\ast & 3 \ast 1 : 1 \ast 2 \ast 1 \\
\end{align*}
\]

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a third strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length; as in,

"The mōste mŷschief on mōlde · is moûntyng wel fâste."

_Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 67._

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of "Morte Arthure,"

"Now grĕt glŏrious Gŏdde · thurgh gráce of hym seluene."

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated.

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes un-emphatic; as in "Morte Arthure," l. 59,

"In Glāmōrganē with glēe · thare glādchipē was ēuere."

(2) Sometimes there are but two rime-letters, as in l. 95,

"At prŷme of the dāye · in pŵyne of ȝour lŷvys."

(3) Sometimes there is no alliteration, as in l. 70. (4) Sometimes there are four rime-letters, as l. 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

"Scāthylle Scōtlandē by skŷlle · he skŷftys as hym lŷkys;"

or as in l. 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

"Hōlaund and Hēnawde · they hēlde of hymē bóthen."

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous swing (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final e's.
"Now grétt glorious Gódde thurgh gráce of hym sélüene,
And the préçuous préyere of hys prýs módyr
Schólde vs ffro schámesdede and sínfulle wérkes,
And gýffe vs gráce to gýe and gónerne vs héré

In this wréchyde wérle thórowe vér½[u]ous lýwynge
That we may káyre til hys cóúrte the kýngdome of hévynë,
Whene oure sáules schalle párte and súndyffs ffrá the bódý
Ewyre to bélde and to býde in blysse wyth hymé sélüene;

And wýsse me to wérpe owte some wórde at this týme,
That nothyre voyde be ne ványne bot wyrchip tille hymé sélvyne;
Plesande and prífítëlle to the póple that theme hères.

Of elders of álde tymé and of theíre áwke dédys,
Hów they were lèlé in theíre láwe and lóued Gód Álmýghty," etc.

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second of in 1. 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter; while in 1. 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless how was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more out loud, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz. that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with 1. 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on s, 2 on hard c, 2 on f, 6 on s, 6 on b, 4 on hard c, 2 on vowels, 2 on s, 2 on ch, 2 on f, and 2 on r. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on s, 3310—3317, 9 on j or soft g, 2889—2897, 10 on f, 3300—3309, and 11 on f, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in Piers the Plowman, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon p in the B-text, Pass. xiv. 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to Piers the Plowman, Text A. pp. xxii and xxx.
NOTES.

Lines 212—215. Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison. Compare the following:—“He earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe ȝinston ȝet hette achathe. Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neiheþ, ne þeo hwule þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes. Þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe and ful of alle mihten, ouer alle ȝinstones. He is þe achathe þet atter of sunne ne neiheþe neuere. Do þine iðine neste, þet is, iðine heorte. Þenc hwuch pinnen þe ȝolede on his flesche wiðuten, and hu swete he was ihearded, and hu softe wiðinnen; and so þu schalt driue ut euerich atter of þine heorte, and bitternesse of þine bodie. . . . . Þes ston, ase ich er seide, avleicð attri þinges. Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dremen þe attrie nedдр of helle. þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter.”—The Ancren Riwle, ed. Morton, p. 134—136. Compare also Piers the Plowman (ed. Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass. ii. l. 14.


793. Brathelle is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed brayelle, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear’s belly. Compare the following:—

“Brayeul: m. The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke.”—Cotgrave.

“The brayle, or pannell of a Hawke. Le brayer d’un oiseau, le brayel.”—Sherwood.

“Braiel, brayette: Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu’on appelle à présent le pont.”—Roquefort.
“Braioel, braoiel: Le haut de la culotte.”—Roquefort.

966. Thou sayst not the vnsekyrly. Thou blessedst thyself unsafely, i.e. you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your safety; otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place. If the sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of no avail.

1195. Read with [the] conquerour.

1270. Or many lyghte salue lawe. Or many shall light low, i.e. fall.

1286. "Horns of elephants full loudly blown." Our fathers were remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals.

1293. Ewayne in the myddes. Right in the middle.

1315. That no mysse serve. Who deserve no ill.

1425. Battailles. Restore the reading of the MS.; it is right.

1474. He ryghttez theire brenez. More likely he ritez.

1485. The relative pronoun is omitted after Boyce. This is a frequent ellipsis. See line 1558, where that is omitted after Henry.

1572. The alliteration would be improved by reading bot [sir] Ewayne.

1588. With mangere to lengene. Qu. with maugree, ill-will.

1653. Lythe. The alliteration and sense require kythe.

1548. Or some deluyerde, i.e. soon to be delivered.

1572. The alliteration would be improved by reading bot [sir] Ewayne.

1717. "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as you please."


1797. Wykkes his ine wayfare. Qu. ine his wayfare.

1840. Lang ere. The MS. reads longere, which may be right.

1911. The line is incomplete; add [many].

2071. Reverssed et redelye. Turned it, the eagle, over quickly.

2108. Heyghe = heythe, heath. Compare treycghe for trewthe.

2128. Handsomere, not more handsome, but more handy or convenient.

2189. 3ife the weurde happyne. Qu. welthe.

2197. This line recurs at 4155.


2250. Beblede at should certainly be Beblede al.

2280. Lyghte strandez. This should perhaps be lythe strandez, as at 1517.

2295. Heghte = heath. See note on 2108.
2398. _I kepe noghte to layne._ I care not to concea.
2408. Turkayne (so in MS.) is certainly a mistake for Tuskyne, Tuscany. Correct the sidenote accordingly.
2506. Insert [of] after myste, or else read mysty.
2519. _With birene ony borne._ This is corrupt; no doubt the right reading is, _With-outene ony borne._
2565. _Alet._ "Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I., a new mode of protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance to little standards, Gonfanons. They are likewise mentioned by the name of ailettes, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park; given in the XVIIIth volume of the Archaeologia; and in the Statuta armorum in Torniamentis, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates. . . . . . They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III. . . . . . Their shape was . . . varied; they were square, round, pentagonal, and shieldlike; sometimes plain, but generally ornamented with the family arms, or the cross of St. George."—Meyrick, in the Archaeologia, vol. xix, pp. 137, 138.
2577. It is well known that in early times barbers practised blood-letting; they would therefore, of course, know how to staunch blood.
2578. _Blyne schalle he never._ He shall never cease [to bleed].
2616. _Cyrus witrye_ should be _cyrwitrye._ The letter q is raised a little and looks very much like the usual contraction for us. Cyrwitrye = surquidry, arrogance, pride.
2675. This line is misplaced; it ought to follow line 2677.
2771. _Breste seems to be a mistake for brethe, breath._
2934. _fly a debles_ seems to be meant for French. Fie, (go) to the devil.
3061. _Idene the._ The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be on the d of this idene and of dout; but there is no reason why it may not be on the i of idene and the e of elles. Idene, if not a miswriting, may be the same as ipenli, frequently, in the following lines:—

"_pai_ bat war fild wit enst and hete
_bat_ ipenli _pair_ hertes ete,
_bar_ wormes sal _ham_ underwrote
In bale wituten hope and bote,
And _for-pi_ _pai_ her war wont to li
_In_ _pair_ stincand licheri,
Ne wald noght here bot _pair_ delices
_bat_ drogh _ham_ until _oper_ vices
_bai_ sal haf _pen_ stinc iwis
_bat_ _pai_ sal never mar mis."—_Cursor Mundi_, as quoted by Dr Morris in the preface to _Hampole’s Prick of Conscience_, pp. x, xi.
The may be the verb thee, to thrive; it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with y. The meaning of the line would be, "He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l. 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess "myldly with fulle meke wordes."

3257. The word With clearly belongs to the line before. With bruchez, &c.

3282. The two eyne. This is clearly an error for "the tone eye" = (the) one eye. "One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg."

3439. Nynne of the nobileste namede in erthe. These were the Nine Worthies. The list agrees with that given in Reliquiae Antiquæ, vol. i. p. 287.

Saraceni. Judæi.
Ector, Alex., Julius; David, Josue, Machabæus;
Cristiani.
Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum linquire nolo:
Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores.

See Shakespere, Love’s Labour Lost, Act 5, sc. 2.

3937. Guchede. I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS., unless it = gutted = goutiè, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland "bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere." Gowces I suppose to be miswritten for gowtes, drops, spots.
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb.
A.S. = Anglo-Saxon.
b. = back.
col. = column.
comp. = comparative form.
Comp. = compare.
conj. = conjunction.
ed. = edited by.
Fr. = French.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive case.
Germ. = German.
Her. = Heraldry.
imp. = imperative.
impers. v. = impersonal verb.
ind. = indicative.
inf. = infinitive.
int. = interjection.
i. p. = imperfect participle.
l. = line.
Lat. = Latin.
ll. = lines.
M. Goth. = Moso-Gothic.
O. E. = Old English.
O. Fr. = Old French.
O. N. = Old Norse.
p. = page.
pl. = plural.
2 pl. = second person plural.
pp. = pages.
p.p. = past or passive participle.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pret. = preterite.
Prompt. Par. = Promptorium Parvulorum.
pron. = pronoun.
Qu. = Query.
ref. = reflexive.
s. = substantive.
1 s. = first person singular.
2 s. = second person singular.
3 s. = third person singular
Sc. = Scotch.
sg. = singular.
Span. = Spanish.
subj. = subjunctive.
superl. = superlative form.
tom. = tomo.
v. = verb.
vol. = volume.

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors’ names:—

Bosworth’s Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary.
Brockett’s Glossary of North Country Words.
Burguy’s Glossary to his Grammaire de la Langue d’Oïl.
Ducange’s Glossarium Mediae et Infimæ Latinitatis, ed. 1840.
Halliwell’s Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words.
Jamieson’s Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language.
Roquefort’s Glossaire de la Langue Romane.
Stratmann’s Dictionary of the Old English Language.
Verelius’s Index linguae veteris Scytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicae, 1691.
CORRECTIONS.

Page 2, sidenotes, for Tours read Touraine.

" 2 " " Aniana read Aniane.

" 2 " " Naverne read Navarre.

" 3 " for the 2nd Caerleon read Carlisle.

" 7 " " hams read shoulders.

" 7 " " bustards read bitterns.

" 28, line 913, for grayuez read graynez.

" 33, sidenotes, for smoke read foam.

" 78, strike out the footnote.

" 134, col. 1, line 23, for Apulia read Poland.

Now grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene, And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr, Schelde vs ffro schamesdede and synfulle werkes, And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here, In this wrechyde werlde thorowe vertous lywynge, That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne, Wheneoure saules schalle parte and sundyrefra the body, Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hymeseluene; And wyssse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme, That nothyre voyle be ne vayne, bot wyrchip tille hymeselyne, Plesande and profitabille to the popule that theme heres. Ye that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here, Off elders of alde tyme and of theire awke dedys, How they were lele in theire lawe, and louede God Al-myghty, Herkynes me heyndly and holdys 3ow styllc, And I sall tale 3ow a tale, that trewe es and nobylle, Off the ryalle renkys of the Rownde Table, That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobylle, Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes, Doughty in theire doyngs, and dредde ay schame,
kind, and courteous, and worshipful.

They slew Lucius, lord of Rome, and won his kingdom. Hear now the story.

When King Arthur had won many kingdoms and countries,

Argyle, Orkney, and the isles,

Ireland and Scotland, Wales, Flanders, and France,

had made tributary Holland and Hainault, Burgundy and Brabant, Brittany, Guienne, Gothland and Greece, he occupied Bayonne and Bordeaux, Tours and Toulouse.

He was prince of Poictiers and [leaf 53, back] Provence, of Valence and Vienne, of Frugiya and Aniana, of Narrone and Norway and Normandy.

Of Germany, of Austria, and many other lands. He conquered all Denmark with his sword. Then he dubbed his knights and gave them lands.

Created kings anointed.

Then rested the hero, and held the Round Table.

After solacing himself in Bri-

Kynde mene and courtays, and couthe of courte thewes; How they whanne wyth were wyrchippis many, Sloughe Lucys the lythyre, that lorde was of Rome, And conqueryd that kyngryke thorowe craftys of armes; Herkenes now hedyrwarde, and herys this storye. 25 Qwene that the kyngse Arthur by conquyste hadewonnyne Castelles and kyngdoms, and contreez many, And he had couerede the coronye of the kyth ryche, 28 Of alle that Vter in erthe aughte in his tyme, Orgayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-iles, Irelande vttirly, as Occyane rynys;

Scathylle Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys, And Wales of were he wane at hys wille, 33 Bathe fflaudredz and ffrance fre till hym seluyne;

Holaund and Henawde they helde of hym bothen, Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse, 36 Gyane and Gothelande, and Greece the ryche;

Bayone and Burdeux he beldytt fulle faire, Turoyne and Tholus with toures fulle hye;

Off Peyters and of Prouyne he was pynce holdyne, 40 Of Valence and Vyenne, off value so noble,

Of Eruge and Anyone, thos erledoms ryche;

By conqueste fulle cruelle they knewe hym fore lorde, Of Nauerne and Norwaye, and Normaundye eke, 44 Of Almayne, of Estriche, and other ynowe;

Danmarke he dryssede alle by drede of hym seluyne, fyn Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, with his swerde1 kene! Qwenne he thesdedes had done, hedoubbyd hys knyghtez, Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes; 49 Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,

In kyth there they couaitte crounes to bere.

Whene he thys2 rewmes hade redyne and rewlyde the popule,

Then rystede that ryalle and helde the Rounde Tabylle;

Suggeourns that sesone to solace hym seluene,

In Bretayne the braddere, as hym beste lykes;

1 MS. swrede. 2 Or thes.
Sythyne wente in-to Wales with his wyes alle, Sweys in-to Swaldyke with his snelle houndes, For to hunt at the hartes in thas hye lammes, In Glamorgane with glee, thare gladchipe was euere. And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys, That Caerlyone was callid, with curius walles, On the riche reuare that rynynys so faire, There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym lykyde;

Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes, This ilke kyde conquerour, and helde hym for lorde, Wyth dukez and dusperes of dyuers rewmes, Erles and ercheuesques, and other ynowe, Byschopes and bachelers, and banerettes nobille, That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys:

Bot on the newze daye, at the none cuyne, As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde, So come in sodanly a senatour of Rome, Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one. He saluzed the sonerayne and the sale aftyr, Ilke a kyng aftyre kyng, and mad his enclines; Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, And syne ayayne to the gome he gaffe vp his nedys:

"Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperor of Rome, Saluz thee as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche; It es credens, sir kyng, with cruelle wordez, Trow it for no truffles, his targe es to schewe! Now in this newzers daye with notaries sygne,

\[1\] swyche struck out, and syche written instead.
I make the somouns in sale to sue for thi landys,
That on Lammesse daye thare be no lette floundene, 92
That thow bee redy at Rome with alle thi Rounde Table,
Appere in his presens with thy price knyghtez,
At pryme of the daye, in payne of your lyvys,
In the kydde Capytoile before the kyng selvynye, 96
Whene he and his senatours bez sette as them lykes,
To ansure anyly why thow occupyes the launde;
That awe homage of alde tille hym and his eldyrs;
Why thow has redyne and raymede, and raunsound the poole, 100
And kyllyde doune his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde;
Thare schalle thow gyffe rekkynynge for alle thy Round Table,
Why thow arte rebelle to Rome, and rentez them wytholdez!
3iif thow theis somouws wythsytte, he sendes thie thies wordes, 104
He salle the seke ouer the see wyth sextene kynges,
Bryne Bretayne the brade, and bryttyne thy knyghtys,
And brynge the bouxsomly as a beste with brethe whare hym lykes,
That thow ne schalle rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene ryche,
Thofe thow for reddour of Rome ryne to the erthe! 108
fior if thow flee in-to Fraunce or ffreselannd owther,
Thou salle be fechede with force, and ouersette fore ouer!
Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde inoure rollez, 112
In the regestre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez:
With-owttynge more trouflynge the trebute we aske,
That Iulius Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghttes!"
The kyngs blyschitone the beryne with his brodeegline,
That fulle brymly for breth brynte as the gledys;
Keste colours as kyng with crouelle lates, 118
Luked as a lyone, and on his lyppye bytes!
The Romaynes for radnese ruschte to the erthe,
hiore ferdnnesse of hys face, as they fey were;
Cowchide as kenetez be-føre the kynge seluyne,
Be-cause of his contenaunce confusede theme semede!
Thene couerd vp a knyghte, and criede ful lowde,1
"Kynge corownde of kynd, curtays and noble,
Misdoo no messangere for menske of thi seluyne,
Sen we are in thy mairede, and mercy the besekes;
We lenge with sir Lucius, that lorde es of Rome, 128
That es the meruelouslyste mane that on molde lengez;
It es lefulle tille vs his likyne tille wyrche;2
We come at his commandement; haue vs excusede."
Then carpys the conquerour crewelle wordez,— 132
"Haa! crauaunde knyghte! a cowarde the semez!
Thare [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare greuede,
Thow durste noghte for3 alle Lumberdye luke one hym ones."

"Sir," sais the senator, "so Crist mott me helpe, 136
The voute of thi vesage has woundyde vs alle!
Thow arte the lordlyeste lede that euer I one lukyde;
By lukyng, with-owttyne lesse, a lyone the semys!" 138
"Thow has me somonde,” quod the kynge, "and said
what the lykes;4
flore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre the the more;
Sen I corounde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,
Was neuer creature to me that carpede so large!
Bot I salle tak concelle at kygnes enoyntede,
Off dukes and duspers and doctours noble,
Offe peres of the parlament, prelates and other;
Off the richeste renkys of the Rounde Table;
Thus schalle I take avisenemente of valiant beryns, 148
Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyglitites:
To warpe wordez in waste no wychiphe it were,
Ne wilfully in this wretfie to wrekene my seluene. 151
flor-thi salle thow lenge here, and lugge wyth thise lordes,

1 hyyhe struck out, and lounde written instead.
2 scheve struck out, and wyrche written instead.
3 MS. fulte.
4 Likyde struck out, and lykes written instead.

The Romans Quail before the King.

Then one of them humbly entreats mercy.

Upon which Arthur upbraids him as a coward.

But the Senator excuses him on the ground that Arthur's visage is very terrible.

The King tells him that he will take counsel of his dukes, doctors, peers, and knights.

While the Romans stay a week
ARThUR ENTERTAINS THE MESSengers.

This seuyenghte in solace, to suggourne your horses, To see whatte lyfe that wee leede in thees lawe landdes." for by the realtee of Rome, that recheuste was euere, Hecommande sir Cayous, "take kepe to thoos lordez, To styghtyle tha steryne mene as theire statte askys, That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambres, Sythyn e sittandyly in sale serynde ther-aftyr; That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez, Nowthire weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in this erthe; Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what the lykys, That there be largesce one loft, and no lake foundene; If thou my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe, Thou sall haue gersoms fulle grett, that gayne sall the euere!"

Now er they herberde in hey, and in oste holdene, Hastily wythlende mene with-in thees heghe wallz; In chambres with chympnes they chaungene theirewedez, And sythyn e the chauncelere theme fecchede with cheualrye noble.

Sone the senatour was sett, as hyme wele semyde, At the kyngez owne borde; twa knyghtes hym seruede, Singdure sowthely, as Arthure hym seluyne, Richely on the ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table; Be resoun that the Romaynes whare so ryche holdene, As of the realeste blode that reynede in erthe. There come inat the fyrste course, be-forthe kyngeselhene, Barcheuedys that ware bryghte, burnyste with syluer, Alle with taghte mene and towne in togers fulle ryche, Of saunke realle in suyte, sexty at ones; fileschi fluriste of ferrmysone with frumentee noble, Ther-to wylde to wale, and wynlyche bryddes, Pacokkes and plourns in platers of golde, Pygges of porke despyne, that pasturede neuer; Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire; Grett swannes fulle swytlie in silueryne chargeours,
THE DISHES AND DRINKS.

Tartes of Turky, taste whame theme lykys; tartes of turkey,
Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste; hams and braun
Seyne bowes of wyld bores with the braune lechyde, in slices,
Bernakes and botures in baterde dysches, geese and
Thareby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,
With brestez of barowes, that bryghte ware to schewe;
Seyne come ther sewes sere, with solace ther-after, 189
Ownde of azure alle ouer and ardant them semyde, Then came
Of ilke a leche the lowe launschide fulle hye,
That alle ledes myghte lyke that lukycle them apone;
Thane cranes and curllues craftyly rosted, 196
Connygez in cretoyne colourede fulle faire,
phressants upon flashing silver,
With darielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe;
Thane claret and Crette, clergyally rennene, With condethes fulle curious alle of clene siluyre;
Then came "sewes sere," Osay a[n]d algarde, and other ynewe,
Witfi condethes fulle curious alle of clene siluyre;
Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was neuer;
Vernage of Veneyc vertuouse and Crete;
In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykes; Rare sorts served
In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe; in cups of fine
There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble, The King's cupboard
Sir Cayous the curtai se, that of the cowpe servued; who served the
Sixty cowpes of suyte fore the kyng seluyne, wine in goblets
crafty and curious, coruene fulle faire, decked with precious stones,
In euer-ilk a party pyghte with precyous stones,
That nane enpoysone sulde goo preuely ther-vndyre, which hinder the
Bot the bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces, deadly effects of
Or ells the venyme sulde voysde thurghe vertue of the poison;
And the conquerour hymseluene, so cleny arayede, 212
In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys,
Drissid with his dyademone his deesse ryche, Arthur was clad
foere he was demyde the doughtyeste that Lucyde in erthe. in cloth of gold
Thane the conquerour kyndly carpede to those lordes,
Rehetede the Romaynes with realle speche, 221

Then came 'sewes sere,'
Wine caused to run skilfully in silver conduits.
"Sirs, be of good cheer, we give you the best our barren country affords, which indeed is but poor."

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast."

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber.

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere.

Spiced drinks were served to all.

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator.

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights.

[leaf 56]
First speaks Sir Cador of Cornwall.

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart.

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace.

"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenaunce, and comfurthes your seluyne,

We knowe noghte in this countré of curious metez;

In thees barayne landez, bredes none other,

fore-thy wythouttyne feynynge, enforce 30w the more

To feede 30w with syche feble as 3e be-fore fynde."

"Sir," sais the senatowr, "so Criste motte me helpe!

There ryngnede neuer syche realtee with-in Rome walles!

There ne es prelatté, ne pape, ne pynce in this erthe,

That he ne myghte be wele payede of thees pryce metes!"

A ftyre theyre welthe they wesché, and went vn-to chambyre,

This ilke kydde conquerour with knyghtes ynewe; 232

Sir Gaywayne the worthye Dame Waynour he ledys;

Sir Owghtret in the tother syde, of Turry was lorde.

Thane spyces vn-sparly thay spendyde there-aftyre,

Maluesye and muskadelle, thase meruelyous drynkes,

Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes,

Tille alle the riche on rawe, Romaynes and other.

Bot the soueraingne sothely, for solauce of hym seluene,

Assingnyde to the senatour certaygne lordez,

To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes,

With myrthe and with melodye of mynstralsy noble,

Thane the conquerour to concelle cayres there-aftyre,

Wyth lordez of his lygemaune that to hym selfe langys;

To the geauntes toure iolily he wendes,

Wyth justicex and iuggez, and gentille knyghtes.

Sir Cador of Cornewayle to the kyngge carppes,

Lughe one hyme luffly with lykande lates,—

"I thanke Gode of that thraa that vs thus thretys!

3ow moste be trayylede, I trowe, bot 3ife 3e trett betttyre:

The lettres of sir Lucius lyghttys myne herte!

We hafe as losels liffye many longe daye,

Wyth deyltyes in this lande with lordchipex many,

And forelytende the loos that we are layttede:

I was abaischite, be our Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

1 MS. the 3ow.

2 MS. ne he.
flore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes! 256
Now wakkenyse the were! wyrychipide be Cryste!
And we salle wyne it ag[al]yne be wyghtnesse and
strengehe!"

"Sir Cadour," quod the kynge, "thi concele es noble,
Bot thou arte a meruaileous mane with thi mery wordez!
flor thou countez no caas, ne castes no forthire, 261
Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes;
I moste trette of a trewe towchande thys nedes,
Talke of thys tythdans that tenes myne herte;
Thou sees that the emperour es angerde a lyttile;
Yt semes be his sandismene that he es sore grenede;
His senatour has sommonde me, and said what hym
lykyde,
Hethely in my halle, wyth heynous wordes,
In speche dissypyszed me, and sparede me lyttile;
I myght noghte spycy for spytte, so my herte trymblyde!
He askyde me tyraunfly tribute of Rome,
That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders;
There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes,
Couerde it of commons, as cronicles telles;
I haue title to take tribute of Rome,
Myne ancestres ware emperours, and aughte it theme
seluene,
Belyne and Bremyne, and Bawdewyne the thyrde,
They ocupyede the empyre aughte score wynntyrs,
Ilkane ayere afytre other, as awlde mene telles;
Thei couerde the Capitoile, and keste doune the walles;
Hyngede of theire heddys-mene by hundrethes at ones;
Seyne Constantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it afytre,
That ayere was of Ynglande, and emperour of Rome,
He that conquerid the crosse be craftez of armes, 284
That Criste was on crucifide, that kyng es of heuene;
Thus hafe we euydens to aske the emperour the same,
That thus regneyz at Rome, whate ryghte that he
claymes."

1 Or somownde.

He rejoices to return again to deeds of arms.
The king praises Sir Cador for his bold words,
spoken from his heart without thought or care.
He himself is grieved at these tidings.
He has been insulted in his own hall by heinous words,
and insolently summoned to pay tribute to the Emperor of Rome.
of whom he ought rather to demand tribute.
His ancestors occupied the Empire of Rome eight score winters.
His kinsman, Constantine, afterwards subdued it—he who gained by conquer the true Cross.
Then answered King Aungers and said that Arthur ought to be supreme over all kings.

The Romans had done many evil deeds in Scotland,

for which he would have revenge.

He promises to bring 50,000 men to aid Arthur.

He fears the Romans no whit.

He promises to bring 50,000 knights within a month.

Then answered kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluyne, "Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other kynges, fiore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndes, The knyghtlyeste of counsaile that ouer corone bare; I dare saye fore Scotlande, that we theme schathe lympyde,

Whene the Romaynes regnede, thay raunsounde oure elyrs, And rade in theire ryotte, and rausychett oury wyfes, With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vs oure gudes; And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Criste, And to the haly vernacle, vertuus and noble, Of this grett velany I salle be venged ones On zone venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes! I salle the forthire of defence fosterde ynewe, fifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes, Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes, To fyghte wyth thy ffaa mene, that vs unfaire ledes."

Tlane the beryche beryne of Bretayne the lyttylle Counsayles sir Arthure, and of hymne besekys To ansuere the alyenes wyth austerene wordes, To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mounttes. He said, "I make myne avowe verreilly to Cryste, And to the haly vernacle, that voide schalle I neure, fior radnesse of na Romayne that regnes in erthe; Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste fisoundene, No more dowtte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns, Then the dewe that es damke, whene that it doune fialles; Ne no more schoune fore the swape of theire scharpe suerddles, Then fore the faireste flour thatt on the folde growes! I salle to batelle the bryngye, of brenyede knyghtes Thyrtty thosannde be tale, thryftye in armes, Wyth-in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche, That thow wylle sothelye assygne, whene thy selfe lykes."

1 Or schoune.
“A! A!” sais the Walscwe kynge, “wirchipid be Criste! Now schalle we wreke fulle wele the wretche of oure elders! In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs thay wroghte, That alle for wandrethe may wepe, that one that were thynkes.

I salle haue the avanttwarde wyterly my schuene, Tylle that I haue venquiste the Vicounte of Rome, That wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones, As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble; He was in Tuskeayne that tyme, and tuke of oure knyghttes, Areste theme vnryghttwyslye, and raunsounde thame afytyre;

I salle hym surelye ensure, that saghetylle salle we neuer, Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfene ones, And dele dynttys of dethe with oure derfe wapyns! And I salle wagge to that were of wyrchipfulle knyghtes, Of Wyghte and of Walschetlande, and of the Weste Marches,

Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys, Of the wyghteste wyes in alle 3one weste landys!”

Syre Ewane fytz Vryenee\(^1\) thane egerly fraynez, Was cosyne to the conquerour, corageous hymselfe, “Sir, and we wyste your wylle, we walde wirke ther-aftyre;

3if this journee sulde halde, or be ajournede forthyre, To ryde one 3one Romaynes and ryott theire landez, We walde schape vs there-fore to schippe whene 30w lykys.”

“Cosyne,” quod the conquerour, “kyndly thou asches; 3ife my concele accorde to conquere 3one landez, By the kalendez of Iuny we schalle encountre ones, Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe! There-to make I myne avowe devotly to Cryste, And to the holy vernacle, vertuous and noble,

I salle at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

\(^1\) *Rena* Vryence.

---

Then Arthur exclaimed Ah! ah! Now shall we have revenge.

He himself would fight at the head of his army till he had revenged himself on the Viscount of Rome for a villany he once wrought him at Viterbo.

He would take two thousand worshipful knights.

Then spoke Sir Ewayne and said that they would all follow his command gladly.

Then said Arthur, “We will be ready by the kalends of June, and at Lammas will enjoy our-
In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethire me leue thynkys; Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne doune the walles, Battie of Petyrsande, and of Pys, and of the Pounte Tremble.

Sugourne there sex wokes and solace my selfene; Send prekers to the price toune, and plaunte there my sege,

Then Sir Ewayne vows vengeance against the Emperor of Rome for occupying Arthur’s heritage, and promises 50,000 men on fair steeds.

Then Lancelot declares his satisfaction at the war.

He is ready to jount with the Emperor himself,

And promises 50,000 men on fair steeds.

And that hathelle may see euer with myne eggin, That occupies thine heritage, the empyere of Rome, I sALLE auntsyre me anes hys egle to touche,

That borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche, And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondyre, Bot he be redily reschowede with riotous knyghtez; I sALLE enforsse fffyfte thosande folke apone faire stedys, On thi ffoo mene to foonde, there the faire thynkes, In ffrarence or in ffiriselande, feghthe where the lykes!”

“By oure Lorde,” quod sir Launcelott, “now lyghttys myne herte!

I lone Gode of this lone1 this lordez has avowede! Nowemay lesse mene haue leue to say whatt themy lykes, And hafe no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynns thise wordez; I sALLE be at journee with gentille knyghtes, On a jamby stede fulle jolyly graythide,

Or any journee be-gane to juste with hym selfene, Emange alle his gcauntez genyuers and other, Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, with strenghe of myne handys,

ffor alle tha steryne in stour, that in his stale houys! Be my retenu arayede, I rekke bott a lyttile To make rowtte in-to Rome, with ryotous knyghtez!

With-in a seuencythe daye, with sex score helmes, 380

1 Or perhaps, lone.
ARTHUR PRAISES HIS KNIGHTS.

I sals be scene on the see, saile whene the lykes."

Thane laughs sir Lottez, and alle one lowde meles,

"Me likez that sir Lucius langes aftyre sorowe;

Now he wylnez the were, hyz wanedretie begynnys, 384

It es owre wereedes to wreke the wretche of oure elders!

I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to the holy vernacle,

And I may se the Romaynes, that are so ryche haldene,

Arayede in theire riotes on a rounde felde, 388

I sals at the reverence of the Rounde Table

Ryde thughte alle the rowtte, rerewarde and other,

Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,

Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez! 392

He that folowes my fare, and fyrist commes aftyre,

Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye wenne of.

And latte me neuere wamntte 3ow, whylls I in werlde regne;

My menske and my manhede 3e mayntene in erthe,

Myne honour alle vterly in other kyngys landes; 400

My wele and my wyrchipe, of alle this werlde ryche,

3e haue knyghtly conqueryde, that to my coroune langes;

Hym thare be ferde for no faees, that swylke a folke ledes,

Bot ever fresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykes.

I acounte no kyng that vndyr Criste lyffes, 405

Whilles I see 3owe alle sounde, I sette be no more."

Q whene they tristily had tretyd, thay trumpypede vp aftyre,

Descendyd doune with a daunce of dukes and erles; 408

Thane they sembede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,

Alle this semly sorte, wythi semblante fulle noble.

Thene the roy realle rechetis thys knyghtytys,

Wythi reverence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table, 412

Tille seuen dayes was gone: the senatore askes

Answere to the emperour with austeryne wordez.

Aftyre the Epiphanye, whene the purpos was takyne

Sir Lottez laughs for joy,

and hopes to see the rich Romans in their pomp,

that he may cut his way through their blood.

Then Arthur praises his knights for upholding his honour.

While they remain true to him he fears no king on earth.

Then the Council breaks up.

Music and dancing succeed,

and they are all feasted in the hall.

After seven days the Senator demands his answer for the Emperor.
ARThur's answer to the emperor.

Of peris of the parliment, prelates and other. 416
The kyng in his concelle, curtaile and noble,
Vtters the alienes, and ansuers hymel seluene:—
"Gret wele Lucius, thi lorde, and layne noghte thise
wordes;
I fe thow be lygmane late hyme wiet sone 420
I salle at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large
In delitte in his lannde, wyth lorde ynewe,
Regne in my realte, and ryste whene me lykes,
By the reyuer of Reone halde my Rounde Table, 424
ffange the fermes in faihte of alle tha faire rowmes,
flor alle the manace of hys myghte, and mawgree his
egne!
And merke sythene ouer the mounttez in-to his mayne
londes, 427
To Meloyne the meruaylous, and myne doune the walles;
In Lorryayne ne in Lumberdye lefe schalle I nowthire
Nokyne lede appone lifse, that thare his lawes zemes;
And turne in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,
Ryde alle thas rowme landes wyth rirotous knyghttys;
Byde hy[m] make reschewes foremenske of hymeseluene,
And mette me for his manhede in thase mayne landes!
I salle be foundyne in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,
The fyreste daye of Feuerzere, in thas faire marches! 436
Are I be fechyde wythi force, or forfette my landes,
The flour of his faire folke fulle hay salle be leuyde!
I salle hym sekyrly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,
To sege the cetee of Rome wythi in seluene wyntyre, 440
And that so sekerly ensege apone sere halfe,
That many a senatour salle syghe for sake of me one!
My sommons er certifie de and thow arte fulle seruyde
Of cuidit and credense, kayre where the lykes: 444
I salle thi journeye engyste, enjonye theme my seluene,
firo this place to the porte, there thow salle passe ouer;
Senene dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,
Sixty myle on a daye, the somme es bott lyttile! 448

1 Or leygmane. 2 Or fatthe.
Thawe moste spee at the spures, and spare noghte thi folle, Thow weyndez by Watling-strette, and by no waye elles: Thare thow nyghtes one nyghte, nedez moste thou lenge, Be it foreste or feld, found thou no forthire; 
Bynde thy blonke by a buske with thy brydille euene,
Lugge thi selfe vndyre lynde, as the leefe thynkes,
There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghttys,
With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene.

Thy lyncene es lemete in presence of lordys,
Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as the thynkes,
For bothe thi lyffe and thi lyme lygges ther-appone,
Tho se sir Lucius had laide the lordchipe of Rome; 

ffor be thou foundene a fute with-owte the flode merkes,
Aftyr the aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,
Thou salle be heuedede in hye, and with horsse drawene,
And seyne heylly be hangede, houndes to gnawene!

The rente ne rede golde, that vn-to Rome langes,
Salle noghte redily, renke, raumsone thyne one!
"Sir," sais the senatour, "so Crist mot me helpe!
Might I with wirchipe wyne awaye ones,
I sulde neuer fore emperour, that on erthe lenge,
Efte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys;
Bot I am sengilly here, with sex sum of knyghtes;
I be-seke 3ow, sir; that we may sounde passe:
If any vnlawefulle lede lettre vs by the waye,
With-in thy lyncene, lorde, thy losse es enpeyrede."
"Care noghte," quod the kynge, "thy countyte es knawene
ffro Carlelele to the coste, there thy cogge lengges; 
Thoghe thy cofers ware fulle, enamde with suluer,
Thow myghte be sekyre of my selc sixty myle forthire."
They enclined to the kyng, and counge they askede,
Cayers owtt of Carlele, catchez one their horsez; 
Sir Cadore the curtayes kende theme the wayes,
To Catrike theme cvnwayede, and to Crist theme bekennye.
So they spede at the spoures, they sprangene their horses,
And never rest till they reach Sandwich by the time prescribed.

Never were they so glad of any thing as of the sound of the sea and Sandwich bells.

They cross the sea to Flanders,

and over Mount St Gothard into Lombardy,

through Tuscany to Rome,

Then the Senator seeks an audience with the Emperor Lucius,

who asks eagerly for Arthur's answer, and on what ground he resists the power of Rome.

His ambassador ought to have seized his sceptre and sat above him.

Arthur, he says, ought himself to have served the Senator.

Hyres theme hakenayes hastily there-aftyre;
So fore reddour they redene, and risted theme neuer,
Bot 3if they lugged it vndire lynd, whills theme lyghte failede;
Bot enere the senatour for-sothe soghte at the gaynesta.
By the seuende day was gone the cetee thai rechide;
Of alle the glee vndire Gode so glade ware they neuere,
As of the sounde of the see and Sandwyche belles!
Wythowttyne more stownntyng they schippide their horsez,
Wery to the wane see they went alle att ones;
With the mene of the walle they weyde vp theire ankyrs,
And fleede at the fore flude, in Flaundrez they rowede,
And thorughe Flaundres they founde, as theme faire thoghte,

Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes;
Gosse by the Mount Goddarde fulle greuous wayes,
And so in-to Lumberddye, lykande to schewe;
They turne thurgh the Tuskeyne, with towres fulle hege,
In pris appairelles theme in precious wedez;
The Sonondaye in suters they suggourne their horsez,
And sekes the Seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes;
Sythyn e prekes to the pales with portes so ryche,
Thare sir Lucius lenges with lordes enowe;
Lowttes to hym lufly, and lettres hym bedes
Of credence enclosyde, with knyghtlyche wordez.

Thene the emperour was agree, and enkerly fraynes,
The answere of Arthure he askes hyme sone,
How he arayes the rewme, and rewlys the pople;
3if he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte that he claymes:
"Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, and syttyne abounge,
fiore reuence and realtee of Rome the noble:
By sertes thow was my sandes, and senatour of Rome,
He sulde fore solempnitee hafe served the hym seluene."

1 lkyde struck out, and thoghte written instead by the same hand.
"That wille he never for no waye\(^1\) of alle this werlde ryche,
Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of handes;
Many fey schalle be fyrste appone the felde leuyde,
Are he appere in this place, profre whene the likes.
I saye the, sir, Arthure es thyne enmye fore ever, \(^519\)
And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of the empyre of Rome,
That alle his ancestres aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe.
Ty nedes this newe 3ere, I notisiede my selfene,
Be-fore\(^2\) that noble of name and neysonome of kynges;
In the moste reale place of the Rounde Table, \(^524\)
I somounde hym solempnylye, one-seande his knyghtez;
Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,
In alle the placez ther I passede of prycez in erthe!
I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnoorry of Rome,
Or I cefte to that soueraygne wharesente one suycnedes!
He may be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle other, \(^530\)
Bathe be chauncez of armes and chenallrye noble,
Of whyesese, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hamndez:
Of alle the wyes thate I watte in this werlde ryche,
The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,
Of kyng or of conquerour, crownede in erthe,
Of countenaunce, of corage, of crewelle lates, \(^536\)
The comlyste of knyghtehode that vndyre Cryste lyffes!
He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,
That no more of golde gyffes thane of grette stones,
No more of wynethane of watyre, that of the welle rynys,
Ne of welthe of this werlde bot wyrchipe allone. \(^541\)
Syche contenaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,
As was with that conuquerour in his courte haldene;
I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kyngez enoynttede,
Hole tene at his table, that tyme with hym sefclue;
He wylle werraye i-wysse, be ware zif the lykes, \(^546\)
Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

\(^1\) wye. \(^2\) Substituted for knyghtez.

Then answers the Senator, that Arthure is too great to do that for any one.

He claims no les than the Empire of Rome.

He tells the Emperor how he had delivered his message, and that he was never so frighted since he was born.

Arthur is worthy to be king of men for his wisdom and valour.

He is the most famous knight in Christendom.

To him gold and silver are as nothing, and wine no more than water.

Ten kings anoint-ed feast at his table.
That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne; for sife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere! Irede thow dresse the ther-fore, and drawe no lytte langere, Be sekyre of thi sowdeours, and sende to the mowntes; Be the quartere of this 3ere, and hym quarte stannnde, He wylle wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye.”

"By Easter," says the Emperor, "I undertake to be in Germany with an army, and will send many giants and mighty men to meet lyne in the mountains.

A watch-tower shall be reared on Mount St. Gothard, with a beacon ready to light,

and another on Mount St. [leaf 50, back] Bernard.
He shall not be suffered to enter Pavia."

Then Lucius sends letters into the East,

to demand aid of all the kings and lords. Quickly they all come, for fear of his might.

That nane enmye with hoste salle entre the mowntes; There schalle one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede another, Buschede with banerettes and bachelers noble:

In at the portes of Pavye schalle no prync passe, Thurghe the perelous places, for my pris knyghtes.”

Thane sir Lucius lordlyche lettres he sendys

Onone in-to the Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez, Tille Ambyganeye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke, To Inde and to Ermony, as Ewfrates rynnys, To Asye, and to Asfrke, and Ewrope the large, To Irrityane, and Elamet, and alle thase owte ilez; To Arrabye and Egipte, tille erles and other,

That any erthe occupyes in thase este marches Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles; For drede of his daungere they dresside theme sone;

Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys

Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones;
To Tartary and Turky, whene tythyngez es comene, They turne in by Thbay, terauntez fulle huggle,
The flour of the faire folke, of Amazonnes landes; Alle thate ssiallez on the felde be forfezette fore euere! Of Babloyne and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes, Bayous with theire baronage bydez no langere; Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and Preter Iohnes landes, Iche prynce with his powere appertlyche graythede; The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes, sfa Nylus to Nazarethe, nommers fulle huge; To Garyere and to Galele they gedyre alle at ones; The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome, Theygadyrede ouere the Grekkes See with greuouswapyns, In theire grete galays, wyth gletcherande scheldez; The kynge of Cyprys one the see the Sowdane habydes, With alle the realles of Roodes, arayede with hymne one; They sailede wyth a syde wynde oure the salte strandez: sodanly the Sarezenes, as theme selfe lykedede, Craftyly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede, sfr the ceté of Rome sexti myle large. Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre, The myghtyeste of Macedone, with mene of tha marches, Pulle and Pruyslande presses with other, The lege-mene of Lettow with legyons ynewe: Thus they semble in sortes, summes fulle huge, Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes, The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges, At the cetee of Rome assembled at ones.

Thane yschewes the emperor armed at ryghtys, Arayede with his Romaynes appone ryche stedys; Sexty geauntes be-fore, engenderide with fendez, With weches and warlaws to wachene his tentys, Ay-ware whare he wendes, wyntrez and 3eres. Myghte no blonkes theme bere, thos bustous churlls, Bot couerde camellez of tourse, enclosyde in maylez; He ayerez oute with alynez, ostes fulle huge, Ewyne in-to Almayne, that Arthure hade wonnyne; Rydes in by the ryuere, and ryottez hymne słuene, And ayerez with a huge wylle alle thas hye landez;
Arthur gathers his fleet,

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykes, 
Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez; 
In the contre of Colome castelles ensegez, 623
And suggeournez that sesone wyth Sarazenes ynewe. 

At the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene 
In his kydde councele commande the lordes,—
"Kayere to your cuntrez, and semble your knyghtes, 
And kepys me at Constantyne clenylyche arayede; 628
Byddez me at Bareflete apone tha blythe stremes, 
Baldly with-in borde with 3owre beste beryns; 
I schalle menskfully 3owe mete in thos faire marches." 632
He sendez furthe sodaynly serjeantes of armes, 
To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys; 
Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assembled, 
At Sandwyche on the see, saile whene hym lykes. 

The fleet assembltes at Sandwich, 
In the palez of Jorke a parlment he haldez, 636
With alle the perez of the rewme, prelates and other; 
And ayyre the prechynge in presence of lordes, 
The kynge in his concelle carpys thes wordes,—
"I am in purpos to passe perious wayes, 640
To kaire with my kene mene, to conquere 3one landes, 
To owttraye myne enmy, 3if auenture it schewe, 
That ocupyes myne heritate, the empire of Rome. 

He holds a parliment at York, 
and appoints as viceroy Sir Mordred, his nephew, 
I sett 3ow here a soueraynyge, ascente 3if 3owe lykys, 
Thatesmesybb, my systersone, Sir Mordrede hym seluene, 
Salle be my leuetenaunte, with lordchipez ynewe, 646
Of alle my lele lege-mene, that my landez 3emes." 
He carpestille his cosynethane, in counsaille hym seluene,—
"I make the kepere, sir knyghte, of kyngrykes manye, 
Wardayne wyrchipfulle, to weilde al my landes, 650
That I haue woundene of werre, in alle this werlde ryche; 
I wylle that Waynour, my weife, in wyrchip be holdene, 
That hire wannente noo wele, ne welthe that hire lykes; 
Luke my kydde castells be clenylyche arrayede, 654
There cho maye suggourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche berynes. 

1 Or Coloine.
flannde my fforestez be firythede, o frenehpe for euere,
That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynour hir seluene,
And that in the sesone whene grees es assignyde,
That cho take hir solance in certayne tymms.
Chauncelere and chambyrleyne chaunge as the lykes,
Audytours and ofycyrs ordayne thy seluene,—
Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,
Luke thow justyfye theme wele that injurye wyrkes:
If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle,
I charge the my sектours, cheffe of alle other,
To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,
To mendynantz ¹ and myseae in myschefe fallene:
Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge,
As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me neuer!
As thow wille answere be-fore the austerlyne jugge,
That alle this werlde wynly wysse as hymy lykes,
Luke that my laste wylle be lelely perfournede!
Thow has clenly the cure that to my coroune langez,
Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyff eke;
Luke thow kepe the so clere, there be no cause foudene,
Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole;
And thow haue grace gudly to gouveyn thy seluene,
I salle coroune the, knyghte, kyng with my handez."
Than sir Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,
Knelyd to the conquerour, and carpes thise wordez,—
"I be-seke 30w, sir, as my sybbe lorde,
That 3e wille for charyté cheese 3ow a-nother;
ffor if 3e putte me in this plytte, 3owre poplees dyssanyde;
To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple.
Whene other of werre wysse are wyrchipide here-afyre,
Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttille.
To passe in your presance my purpos es takyne,
And alle my purueunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez."
"Thowe arte my nueewe fulle nere, my nurrree of olde,
That I haue chasteyde and chosene, a childe of my chambyre;" ¹ MS. mendynantz.
Then Arthur takes leave of his queen.

Guinever laments his departure, and would rather die in his arms, but Arthur bids her not to grieve, and tells her that he has made Mordred, a knight of her own, his deputy.

[Leaf 61] Then he kisses the ladies, and takes leave of them. But Guinever swoons when he asks for his sword.

The king then departs hastily with his knights.

ffor the sybredyn e of me, fore-sake noghte this offfee
That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow wette watter it menes."

Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere, 693
At lordez, at lege-mene, that leues hym by-hyndene.
And seyne that worthilyche wy went vn-to chambyre, ffor to comfurthe the qwene, that in care lenges; 696
Waynour wakkly wepande hym kyssiz,
Talkez to hym tenderly with teres ynewe,—

"I may wery the wy e, thatt this werre moweude,
That warmes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde;
Alle my lykynge of lyfe owte of lande wendez,
And I in langour am lefte, leue 3e for euere!

Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in you r armes, 703
Are I this destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one!"

"Grefe the noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,
Ne gruche noghte my ganggynge, it salle to gude turne!
Thy wonrydez and thy wepynge woundez myne herte,
I may noghte wit of this woo, for alle this werlde ryche;
I haue made a kepere, a knyghte of thyne awene, 709
Ouerlynge of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,

And that es sir Mordrede, that thow has mekylle praysede,
Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes."

Thare he takez hys leue at ladys in chambyre, 713
Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-teches;
And then cho swounes full e swythe, whe[n] he hys swerde aschede,

Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde! 716
He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordez,
Prekys of the palez with his prys knyghtes,
Wyth a realle rowte of the Rounde Table; 719
Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hyme no more!
Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,
Garneschit one the grene felde and graythelyche arayede;
Dukkes and dusseperez daynteheley rydes,
Erlez of Ynglande with archers ynewe:

1 MS. whatte watto.
Schirreues scharply schifftys the comouns, 
Rewlys be-fore the ryche of the Rounde Table, 
Assingnez ilke a contree to certayne lordez, 727
In the southe one the see banke saile whene theme lykes. 
Thane bargez theme buskez, and to the bannke rowes, 
Bryngez blonkez one bourde, and burlyche helmes; 
Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes, 
Tentez, and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche, 732
Cabanes, and clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble, 
Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez; 
Thus they stowe ine the stuffe of fulle styrnye knyghtez.

Q wene alle was schyppede that scholde, they schounte no lengere, 736
Bot ventelde theme tyte, as the tyde rynnez; 
Coggez and crayers than crossez thaire mastez, 
At the commandment of the kyncre, vncouerde at ones. 
Wyghtly one the wale they wyte vp thaire ankers, 740
By wytt of the waytre-mene of the wale ythez, 
firekes one the forestayne fakene thaire coblez, 
In floynes, and fercozest, and Flemesche schyppes, 
Tytt saillez to the toppe, and turnez the lufe, 744
Standez appone stere-bourde, sterlynly they songene, 
The pryce schippez of theporte prouene thaire depnesse, 
And fondez wyth fulle saile ower the fawe ythez; 
Holly with-owttyne harme they halie in bottes, 748
Schipe-mene scharply schotene thaire portez, 
Launchez lede apone lufe, lachene ther depez, 
Lukkes to the lade-sterne, whene the lyghte faillez; 
Castez coursez be crafte, whene the clowde ryeze, 752
With the nedylle and the stone one the nyghte tydez; 
ffor drede of the derke nyghte they drecche'de a lyttile, 
And alle the steryne of the streme strekyne at onez. 
The kynge was in a gret cogge, with knyghtez fulle many, 
In a cabane enclosecle, clenlyche arayede; 757
With-in on a ryche bedde rystys a littyle, 
And with the swoghe of the see in swefnyng he felle.

1 Or tewttez.
and dreams of a dreadful dragon.

Hym dremyd of a dragone, dredfulle to be-holde, 

Come dryfande ouer the depe to drenschene hys pople, 

Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez, 

Wanderande vnworthily ouere the wale ythez; 

Bothe his hede and hys hals ware haleyly alle ouer 764 

Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire: 

His scoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluere, 

Schreede ouera lle the schrympe with schrinkande pouuntez; 

Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes, 768 

In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye; 

Whayme that he towchede he was tynt for euer!

Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabylle, 

And syche a vennymous flayre flowe fro his lyppez, 

That the flode of the flaweze alle one fyre semyde! 773

Thane come of the Orynte, ewyne hyme agaynez, 

A blake bustous bere awene in the clowdes, 

With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge, 

With pykes fulle perilous, alle plyande thame semyde, 

Lothene and lothely, lekkes and other, 

Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire, 

filtyrde vnfrely, wyth fomannde lyppez, 780 

The foulleste of fegure that fourmede was euer! 

He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundyschte ther-after; 

To bataile he bounnez hym with bustous clowez: 

He romede, he rarcede, that roggede alle the erthe! 784 

So rudyedly he rappyd at to ryt hym seluene!

Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme a-3aynez, 

And with hysduttezhymdraf ener greghe by the walkyne: 

He fares as a fawcone, frekly he strykez; 788 

Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghttys at ones! 

The bere in the bataile the bygger hym semyde, 

And byttes hyme boldlye wyth balefulle tuskez; 

Syche buffetez he hym rechez with hys brode klokes, 

Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer! 793

He rawmpyeo so rudyedly that alle the erthe ryfez, 

Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of the heuene! 

He hade weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strenghte,
Ne ware it fore the wylde fyre that he hymewythli defendez.

Then wandyrs the worne awaye to hys heghttez, Commes glydande fro the clowddez, and cowpez fulle ene; 799
Towchez hym wyth his talounez, and terez hys rigge, Be-twylx the taile and the topp te ne fote large!
Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe, Lette hyme falle in the tlode, fleece whare hyme lykes:
So they brynge the bolde kyng byynne the schippe-burde, That nere he bristex for bale, one bede whare he lyggez.
Thane waknez the wyse kynge, verye fore-traualilcde, Takes hym two phylozophirs, that folowede hymerever, In the seuyne seyence the sutelestc fondene, 808
The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyrre Criste knowene; He tolde themc of hys tourmente, that tymc that he slepede,
"Drechede with a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,
Has mad me fulle wery; 3e telle me my swefene, 812
Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wyssse me oure Lorde!"
"Sir," saide they some thane, thies sagge philosophercs, 817
"The dragone that thow dreymye of, sodredfulleto schewe,
That comedryfande ower the deepe, to drychene thy pople,
Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es,
That thus saillez ouer the see with thy sekyre knyghtez:
The colurez that ware castyne appone his clere wengez,
May be thy kyngrykezalle, that thow hasryghte wonne;
And the tachesseele taile, with tonges so huge,
Be-takyns this faire folke, that in thy fleet wendez.
The bere that bryttenede was abowene in the clowdez,
Be-takyns the tyrauntez that tourmentez thy pople;
Or elles with somme gyant some journye salle happyne,
In syngulere batelle by 3oure selfe one;
And thow salle hafe the victorye thurghe helpe of oure Lorde,
As thow in thy visione was opynly schewedey! 828
Of this dredfulle dreme ne drede the no more,
Ne kare noughte, sir conquerour, bot comforth thy seluene;
Arthur arrives in Normandy,

And thise that saillez ouer the see, with thy sekyre knyghtez."

With trumppez thene trystly, they trisene vpe thaire saillez,

And rows e ouer the ryche see, this rowt te alle at onez;
The comely coste of Normandy they cachene fulle euene,
And blythely at Barflete theis bolde are arryfede,
And fyndys a flete there of frendez ynewe,
The floure and the faire folke of fyftene rewmez;
siore kyngez and capytaynez kepyde hyme fayre,
As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym seluene.

Be they had takene the lande, and tentez vpe rerede,

1 Or Commez.

and who had that day captured the
[leaf 62, back]
Duchess of Brist-
tany, and carried her to the

mountain.

She was the flower of all
France, and the fairest
lady on earth,
Scho was thy wyfes cosyne, knowe it if the lykez, 864 cousin of Arthur's queen.

Comene of the rychoste, that regnez in erthe:
As thow arte ryghtwise kynge rewe on thy pople,
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde!"

"Allas!" sais sir Arthure, "so lange haue I lyffede,
Hade I wyttene of this, wele had me chefede; 869
Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynede,
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede!
I had leuere thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,
I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, 873
Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledd to the montez:
I hadde lefte my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppyde!
Bot walde thow kenemeto the crage, thare that kene lengez,
I walde cayre to that coste, and carpe wythe hyme selhene,
To trette with that tyraunt fore tresone of londes,1
And take trewe for a tyme, tille it may tyde bettyre."

"Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, with 3one two fyirez, 880
Thar filsnez2 that fende, fraiste whene the lykes,
Appone the creste of the crabbage, by a colde welle,
That enclosez the clyfe with the clere strandez,
Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owttynye nowmer,
Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre; 885
And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne,
Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, that tyme that it was wonne."

Thane romyez the ryche kynge for rewe of the pople,
Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere! 889
He welterys, he wrieste, he wyngen hys handez!
Thare was no wy of this werlde, that wyste whatt he
menede!

He calles sir Cayous that of the cowpe serfede, 892
And sir Bedevere the bolde, that bare hys brande ryche,—
"Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez,
On blonkez by 3one buscayle, by 3one blythe stremez,
Sfore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre,
In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are servede, 897
Sfore to sekene a saynte be 3one salte stremez,

1 Originally lordez. 2 Or filsuez.
In seynt Mighelle mount, there myraclez are schewedec."
Aftyre enesange, sir Arthure hymse[ ][ ]fene
Wente to hys warde, and warpe of hys wedez,
Armee hym in a actone with orfrazz fulle ryche,
Abouen one that a jeryne of Acres owte ouer;
Abouen that a jesseraunt of jentylle maylez,
A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schredez;
He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of syluer,
The beste that was in Basille, wyth bordurs ryche;
The creste and the coronalle, enclosed so faire
"Wyth claspis of clere golde, couched wyth stones;
The vesare, the aventaile, enarmede so faire,
He bracez a brade schelde, and his brandez,
Bounede hym a broune stede, and one the bente houys;
He sterte tille his sterepe and strize one lofte,
Streynez hymne stowttly, and sterys hymne faire,
Brochez the baye stede, and to the buske rydez,
And there hys knyghtes hymne kepede fulle clencyche arayede.
Thane they roode by that ryuer, that rynnyd so swythe,
Thare the ryneze onerremez with realle bowghez;
The roo and the rayne-dere reklesse thare roonne,
In ranez and in rozers to ryotte thame seluene;
The frithez ware floreschite with flourez fulle many,
Wyth fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewe;
Alle the feulez thare fleschez, that flyez with wengez,
ffore thare galede the gowke one greuez fulle lowde,
Wyth alkyn'e gladchipe thay gladdene theme seluene:
Of the nyghtgale notez the noisez was swette,
They threpide wyth the thrstilles, thre hundretfi at ones!
That whate swowyngne of watyre, and syngyne of byrdez,
It myghte salue hym of sore, that sounde was nuere!
Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez,
flestenez theire faire stedez o ferrome by-twene;
And thene the kyng bekenely comandyde hys knyghtez for to byde with theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—
“fiore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one, 937
And melle with this mayster mane, that this monte 3emez;
And seyne selle 3e offyrre, aythyre aftyr other,
Menskfully at Saynt Migelye fulle myghty with Criste!”

The kyng coueris the cragge wyth douches full hye,
The waye by the weHe strandez he wandyrde hyme one,
To wette of the warlawe, where that he lengez; 948
He ferkez to the fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez
A wery wafulle wedowe, wringande hire handez,
And gretande on a graue grysely teres,
Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede: 952
He salu^ede that sorowfulle with sittande wordez,

And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre.
Thane this wafulle wyfe vni-wynly hym gretez,
Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez;
Said, “carefullere caremane, thow carpez to lowde! 957
May 3one warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle!
Weryd worthe the wyghte ay, that the thy wytte refede,
That mase the to wayfe here in thise wylde lakes! 960
I warne the fore wyrchipe, thou wylnez aftyr sorowe!
Whedyre buskes thou berne? vnbllysside thou semes!
Wenez thou to brittene hyme with thy brande ryche?
Ware thou wygghtere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,
Thow wynys no wyrchipe, I warne the be-fore! 965
Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to these mountez,
Siche sex ware to symple to semble with hyme one;
for and thou see hyme with syghte, the sernez no herte,
To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge! 969

Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,
Bot thowarte fay be myfaythi, and that me for-thynkkys!
Fifty such as Arthur he could fell with his list.

The poor duchess has been ravished and murdered by him, and the dolorous widow, her foster-mother, has buried her, and will remain there till death to bewail her.

[leaf 81]
Then Arthur says that he comes from the great King Arthur on a mission to treat with the giant.

And there the duchess dere,—to daye was cho takynye,—Depe doulene and dede, dyked in molde,
He hade morthiredde this mylde be myddaye war rongene,
With-owtynye mercy one molde, I not watte it mert:
He has forsede hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede;
He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to the nauylle!
And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede ther-aste;
flor bale of the botelesse, blythe be I neuer!
Of alle the frendez cho hade, there folowede none aftyre,
Bot I, hir foster maydr of fyftene wynter!
To ferke of this farlante, fande selle I neuer,
Bot here be foundene on felde, tille I be fay leuede!"

Thane answers sir Arthure to that alde wyf;
"I am comyne fra the conquerour, curtaise and gentille,
As one of the hathelest of Arthure knyghtez,
Messenger to this myx, for mendemente of the pople,
To mele with this maister mane, that here this monte zemez;
To trete with this tyrant for tresour of landez,
And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe." 992
"3a, thire wordis are bot waste," quod this wif thame,
"flor bothe landez and lythes fynle lytille by he settes;
Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkeze he neuer,
flor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,
With-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene;
Bot he has a kytille one, kepide for hymse luene,
That was sponene in Spayne with specyalle byrde,
And syothyne ganesch in Grece fullis graythly to-gedirs;
It es hydede alle with hare hally al ouere,
And bordyrde with the berdez of burlyche kyngez,
Crispid and korbide, that kempis may knawe
Iche kynge by his colour, in kytthe there he lengez;
Here the fermez he fangez of fyftene rewnez,
flor ilke Estene ewyne, how-euer that it falle,
They send it hymne sothely for saughte of the pople,
Sekerly at that sesone with certayne knyghtez, 1008
And he has aschede Arthure alle this seuene wyntter.
ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owttayye hys pople,
Tille the Bretones kynge haue burnschete his lyppys,
And sent his berde to that bolde wytlı his beste berynes;
Bot thowe hafe broghte that berde, bowne the no forthire,
ffor it es butelssse bale, thowe biddez oghte elles; 1014
ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,
Than euere aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders;
If thowe hafe broghte the berde, he beso more blythe
Than thowe gave hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne the more;
Bot luke nowe for charitee, thow chasty thy lyppes,
That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez; 1020
Luke thi presante be priste, and presse hym bott lytille,
ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be some greuyde.
And thow my concelle doo, thow dosse of thy clothes,
And knele in thy kyrtyllé, and calle hym thy lorde.
He sowppes alle this sesone with seuene knaue childre,
Choppid in a chargour of zalke whytt syluer, 1026
With pekille and powdyre of precious spyecez,
And pyment fullé plenteuous of Portyngale wynes;
Thre balefullé birdez his brochez they turne, 1029
That byddez his bedgatt, his byddynge to wyrrche;
Siche foure scholde be fay with-in foure hourez,
Are his fylthi ware fillide, that his fleschi 3ernes.”

“3a, I haue broghte the berde,” quod he, “the bettyre
me lykez;
ffor-thi wille I boun me, and bere it my seluene;
Bot, lefe, walde thow lere me whare that lede lengez,
I salle alowe the and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe!”
“fierke fast to the fyre,” quod cho, “that flawmez so hyce;
Thare fillis that fende hyme, fraist whene the lykez;
Bot thow moste seke more southe, sydlyngs a lytille,
ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large.” 1040
To the sowre of the reke he soghte at the gayneste,
Sayned hyme sekerly with certeyne wordez,
And sydlyngs of the segge the syghte had he rechide,
Then Arthur's heart bleeds for the woes inflicted by this wretch, He fastens on his shield and brandishes his bright sword, and right boldly addresses the giant.

For his horrible murders of Christian children, he would now take vengeance on him, by the aid of St Michael.

Then the giant stared with amazement, and gnashed his teeth with fury.

How vn-semly that sott satt sowpande hym one; He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faire, The thee of a manns lymne lyfte vp by the baunche; His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez, He bekez by the bale-fyre, and breklesse hymsemede; Thare ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez, Beerynes and bestaile brochede to-geders; Cowlefulle cremede of crysmede childyre, Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez thame tournde.

And thame this comlych kynge, by-cause of his pople, His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez! Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere, Braundesche his bryghte swerde by the bryghte hiltez, Raykez to-warde the renke reghte with a ruyde wille, And hyely hailsez that hulke with hawtayne wordez,—

"Now, alle-weldand Gode, that wyrscleppez vs alle, Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thow lygges, ffor the fulsomeste freke that fourmede was euere! ffouly thow fedys the, the fende haue thi saule! Here es cury vn-clene, carle, be my trowthe, Caffe of creatours alle, thow curssede wriche! Be-cause that thow killide has thise cremede childyre, Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe, That here are brochede one bente, and britteneede with thi handez, I salle merke the thy mede, as thow has myche serfede, Thurghe myghteof seynt Mighelle, that this monte yemes! And for this faire ladye, thow has fey leuyde, And thus forcede one foulde, for fyth of thi selfene! Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the dewelle haue thi saule! ffor thow salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez!"

Thane gloopned the glotone and gloreded vn-faire; He greneede as a grewhounde, with grisly tuskes; He gapede, he groned faste, with gruchande latez, ffor gref of the gude kynge, that hymse with grame gretz! His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,
And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large;
His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer;
As the felle of a froske, and fraknede it semede,
Hooke-nebye as a hauwe, and a hore berde,
And herede to the hole eyghne with hyngande browes;
Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez,
So was the hyde of that hulke hally al ouer!
Erne had he fulle huge, and vgy to schewe,
With eyghne fulle horreble, and ardauent for sothe;
flatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fleyranye lypyps,
And the flesche in his fortethe fowly as a bere.
His berde was brothly and blake, that tille his brest
rechede,
Grassed as a mereswyne with corkes fulle huge,
And alle falterde the flesche in his foule lypyps,
Ilke wrothe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones!
Bullenekkywel was that bierne, and brade in the scholders,
Brok-brestede as a brawne, with brustils fulle large,
Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes,
Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue 3e for sothe:
Schouelle-fotede was that schalke, and schaylanye hymne
semyde,
With schankez vn-schapl, schowande to-gedyrs;
Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in the hanche,
Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez!
Who the lenghe of the lede lelly accountes,
firo the face to the fote, was fyfe fadome lange!
Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styfle schankez,
And sone he caughte hymne a clubbe alle of clene yrynne!
He walde hafe kylyled the kynge with his kene wapene,
Bot thurghe the crafte of Cryste jet the earle failede;
The creest and the coronalle, the claspes of sylner,
Clenly with his clubbe he crasschede doune at onez!
The kynge castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire,
And with his burlyche brande a box he hymne reches;
ffulle butt in the frunt the fromonde he hittez,

OUT OF HIS MOUTH CAME SMOKED.
His forehead was like the fell of a frog.
He was hooke-nosed like a hawk, with hair
up to his eyes, and beetle browes.
His skin was hard as that of a dog-fish; his ears
huge and ucly; his eyes horrible and burning.
Flat-mouthed, with grumning lips, and jaws
like a bear.
A black beard reached to his breast, with
mighty bristles.
The flesh of his lips was in uneven folds, each
fold, like an oval, twisted itself out.
He was bull-necked and broad
In the shoulders; breasted like a bear, with huge
bristles; his arms
like an oak; his limbs and flanks
leathly; shovelfooted and scaly,
with unshapely shanks;
of gigante thickness in his
haunches.
In height, full
five fathoms.
Up starts this
fell giant, and
seizing an iron
club, arms a blow
at Arthur.
The king catches
it on his shield,
and returns the
blow with his
sword right upon
the forehead.
The bright blade pierces to the brain.
The giant wipes his face with his hands, and strikes fiercely at the king.
Arthur draws back,
and then drives his sword into the giant's haunch.

That the burnyscht blade to the brayne ryneze;
He feyede his fysnamye with his foule hondez,
And frappez faste at hys face fersely ther-aftyre!
The kyng chaungesz his fote, eschewes a lyttile, 1116
Ne had he eschapede that choppe, cheuede had euylle;
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte

Hye vpe one the hanche, with his harde wapyne,
That he hillid the swerde halfe a fote large; 1120
The hott blode of the hulke vn-to the hilte ryneze,
Ewyn e in-to junette the gyaunt he hyttez,
Just to the genitales, and jaggede thame in sondre!

Thane he romyede and rarede, and ruyedly he styrykez
fulle eagerly at Arthure, and one the erthe hittez 1125
A swerde lenghe with-in the swarthe, he swappez at ones,
That nere swounes the kyng for swoughe of his dynettez!
Bot 3it the kynges sweeperly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,
Swappez in with the swerde that it the swange brystedde;
Bothe the guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones,
That alle englaymez the gresse, one grounde ther he standez! 1131

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kynges hentez,
On the creeste of the cragg he caughte hyme in armez,
And enclosez hyme clenly, to cruschene hys rybbez;
So harde haldez he that hende, that nere hisherte brystez!
Thane the balesfulle bierdez bownez to the erthe, 1136
Kneland and cryande, and elappende theire handez,—
"Criste comforthe 3one knyghte, and kepe hym fro sorowe,
And latte neuer 3one fende felle hyme olyfe!"

3itt es the warlow so wyghte, he welters hymne vndere,
Wrothely thai wrythyne and wrystille to-gederz, 1141
Welters and walowes ouer with-in thase buskez,
Tumbellez and turnes faste, and terez thaire wedez,
Vn-tenderly fro the toppe thai titfine to-gederz; 1144
Whilome Arthure ouer, and other-while vndyre,
sfro the heghe of the hylle vn-to the harde roche;

1 MS. genitates.
They fyn are they fall at the flode merkes; 1148
Bot Arthur with anlace eagerly smyttez, 1149
And hittez eu'r in the hulke vp to the hiltiez.
The thesfe at the dede-thrawe so throly hym thryngez,
That three rybbys in his syde he thrystetz in sundere!
Thene sir Kayous the kene vn-to the kynge styrtetz,—
Said, "allas! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,
Ouer-fallene with a fende! vs es fulle hapnede!
We mone be forfeetede in faithli, and flemyde for eu'r!"
Thay hafe vp his hawberke thane, and handilez ther-vndyre,
His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to the schuldriz,
His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez, 1158
Bothe his bakke and his breste, and his bryghte armez.
Thay ware fayne that they faende no flesche entamede,
And for that jornee made joye, thir gentille knyghttetz.
"Now, certez," saise Sir Bedwere, "it semez, be my Lorde!
He sekez seyntetz bot seldene, the sorere he grypes,
That thus clekys this corsaunt owte of thir heghe clyffez,
To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere; 1162
Be Myghelle, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre
That eu'rowre soueraygne Lorde suffers hym in heuene;
And alle seyntez be syche, that servez oure Lorde, 1168
I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle!"
Thane bouredez the bolde kynge at Bedwere wordez,—
"This seynt haue I soghtez, so helpe me owre Lorde!
ffor-thy brayd owtte thi brande, and broche hym to the herte;
Be sekere of this sergeaunt, he has me sore greneade!
I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke this fystene wyntyrs,
Bot in the montez of Araby I mett syche another;
He was the foreyere be ferre that had I nere fundene,
Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede!
Onone stryke of his houede, and stake it there-aftyre,
Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede; 1177
Arthur stabs the giant,
who in his death-struggle breaks three of Arthur's ribs.
His knights find him lying exhausted.
They examine him and find no wound.
Sir Bedever speaks facetiously of this saint whom Arthur had sought.
If all saints are like him no saint would he be.
Arthur bids him stab the monster to the heart, to make sure of him, for only once before had he met with such a terrible foe.
He bids them cut off his head.
and bear it first to Sir Hoel, [leaf 66]
then to Barflete, and set it on the barbacan.
His sword and shield and the giant's club are to be fetched from the hill.

They may take what treasure they will; all Arthur desires is the kirtle and the club.

Then the people kneel before Arthur, and thank and praise him for slaying the giant.

Bere it to sir Howelle, that es in harde bandez, 1180
And byd hymne herte hym wele, his enmy es destruuede!
Syne bere it to Barflete, and brace it in yryne,
And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to scheewe.
My brande and my brode schelde apone the bent lyggez,
On the creeste of the cragge, thare fyrste we encontrede,
And the clubb thar-by, alle of clene irene,
That many Cristene has kyllyde in Constantyne landez;
If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez;
Haue I the kyrtylle and the clubb, I coueite noghte elles!" 1188

Now they caire to the cragge, thise comlyche kynghtez,
And broghte hymne the brande schelde, and his bryghte wapene,

The clubb and the cotte aHs, Syr Kayous hym seluene,
And kayres with conquerour, the kyngez to scheewe;
That in couerte the kynge helde closse to hym seluene,
Whilles elene day fro the clowde clymbyd on lofte.

Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge,
And be-fore the comlyche kynge they knelyd alle at ones,— 1199
"Welcome,oure liege lorde, to lang has thow dulclyde!
Gouernour vndyr Gode, graytheste and noble,
To whame grace es graunted, and gyffene at his wille!
Now thy comly come has comfortede vs alle!
Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy pople!
Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enmyse are struyede,
That has thy renkes ouer-ronne, and refte themetheire childyre!

Whas neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuued!"

Arthur ascribes all to God.

He bids his followers distribute
To schake furthe with the schyre mene to schifte the gudez;

"Alle the myche tresour that traytour had wonnene,
To comouns of the contré, clergye and other,
Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople,
That none pleyne of theire parte, o peyne of your lykez."
He comande hys cosyne, with knyghtlyche wordez,
To make a kyrke on the cragg, ther the corse lengez,
And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe,
In mynde of that martyre, that in the monte rystez.

Qwen Sir Arthur the kynge had kyllde the gyaunt,
Than blythely fro Bareflete he buskes one the morne,
With his batelle one brede, by tha blythe stremes;
To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym the waye,
Thurge a faire champayne, vndyr schalkle hyllis;
The kyng fraystez a furth ouer the fresche strandez,
ffoundez with his faire folke ouer as hym lykez:
ffurthe stepes that steryne, and strekez his tentis
One a strenghe by a streme, in thas straytt landez.

Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,
\[leaf 66, back\]

Then come two messengers from the Marshal of France, who acquainted Arthur

with the mischief which the Emperor Lucius is working in France,

ffra the marshalle of Frannce, and menskfully hym gretes,
Be-soghte hyme of sucour, and saide hyme thise wordez,—
"Sir, thi marshalle, thi mynistre, thy mercy be-sekez,
Of thy mekille magestee, fore mendement of thi pople,
Of thise marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede,
And thus merrede amange, maugree theire eghe,
I witter the the emperour es entirde in-to Frannce,
With ostes of enmyse, orrible and huge;
Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,
And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez thare-in;
He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,
Countrese and castelles that to thy coroun laengez;
Confoundez thy comouns, clergye and other;
Bot thow conforthi theme, sir kynge, couer salle they neuer!
He fellcx forestez fele, forrayse thi landez,
ARTHUR BIDS LUCIUS QUIT THE LAND.

Taking goods, killing dukes and douze-peers.

Therefore they desire Arthur's help.

He sends some of his knights to the emperor,

He sends them to the emperor, to hide him depart out of his kingdom, or meet him in battle.

The knights go on their errand glittering in gold upon great steeds.

fyrsthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople;

Thus he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez!

firemedly the Franche tunge fey es be-lefedec.

He drawes in-to douce Freunce, as Duche-men tellez, Dresside with his dragouns, dreadfulle to scheue;

Alle to dede they dyghte with dynttyes of swerddez,

Dukez and dusperes, that dreches thare-ine;

fiir-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and other,

Prayes the for Petyr luffe, the apostyle of Rome,

Sen thow arte presant in place, that thow wille profyre make

To that perilous prync, be processe of tyme.

He ayers by 3one hilles, 3one heghe holtez vndyr,

Hufes thare with hale strenghe of haythene kyngez;

Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuene sittez,

And talke tristyly to them, that thus vs destroyes!"

The kynge biddis sir Boice, "buske the be-lyfe!

Take with the sir Berille, and Bedwere the ryche,

Sir Gawayne and sir Gryme, these galyarde knyghtez,

And graythe 3owe to 3one grene wode, and gose oner ther nedes;

Saise to syr Luciws, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,

Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople;

I lette hyme or oghte lange, jif me the lyffe happene,

Or many lyghte salah lawe, that hyme ouere lande folowes.

Comande hym kenely wyth crewelle wordez,

Cayre owte of my kyngrye with his kydd knyghtez;

In caase that he wille noghte, that cursede wreche,

Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones!

Thane salle we rekkene fulle rathe, whatt ryghte that he claymes,

Thus to ryot thys rewme and raunsone the pople!

Thare salle it derely be delte with dynttez of handez:

The Dryghttene at Domesdaye dele as hyme lykes!"

Now theigraytheythemetogoo, theisgalyardeknyghtez,

Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes,

To-warde the grene wode, that with growndone wapyne,
To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone.

Thise hende houez on a hille by the holte eynes,
Be-helde the howsyne fulle hye of hathene kynges—
They herde in theire herbergage hundrethez fulle many,
Hornez of olyfantez fulle helycli blawene—
Palaisez proudliche pyghte, that palyd ware ryche,
Of palle and of purpure, wytli precyous stones; 1288
Pensels and pomelle of ryche pryncze armez,
Pighte in the playne mede, the pople to schewe.

And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayede their
tentez,
On rawe by the ryuere, vndyr the round hillez, 1292
The emperowr for honour eyrne in the myddes,
Wyth egles al ouer enelled so faire :
And saw hyme and the sowdane, and senatours many,
Sele to-warde a sale with sextene kyngez, 1296
Syland softlye in, swettly by theme selfene,
To sowpe withe that soueraygne, flulle selcouthe metez.
Nowe they wende ouer the watyre, thise wyrichipulle
knyghttez,
Thurghe the wode to the wone, there the wyse rystez ;
Regt as they hade weschene, and went to the table,
Sir Wawayne the worthethy vn-wynly he spekes,—
"The myghte and the maiestee, that menskes vs alle,
That was merked and made thurghe the myghte of Hym
seluene,
Gyffe 3ow sytte in 3ow sette, Sowdane and other,
That here are semblede in sale, vn-sawghte mott 3e
worthe !
And the fals heretyke, that emperour hym callez,
That occupyes in erroure the empyre of Rome, 1308
Sir Arthure herytage, that honourable kyngye,
That alle his auncestres anghte bot Vtere hymo one,
That ilke eursyne that Cayme kaghte for his brotherye,
Cleffe one the, cukewalde, with croune thew thow lengez,
ffor the vnlordlyeste lede that I on luukede ouer! 1313
My lorde meruaiHes hym mekylle, mane, be my trouthe,
THE EMPEROR’S ANSWER.

Why thou worthiers his mene, that no mysse serues,
Comouns of the countré, clergye and other, 1316
That are noghte coupleable ther-in, ne knawes noght in
armez.

\[\text{flor-thi the comelyche kyng, curtays and noble,}
\]

Comandez the kenely to kaire of his landes,
Ore elles for thy knyghthedede encontre hymes ones ; 1320
Sen thow couettes the corouñe, latte it be declarede !
I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,
Be-fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and other.
Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte thow no lengere,
That we may schifte at the schorte, and schewe to my
lorde.” 1325

The emperou ansuerde wythi austeryne wordez,
“3e are with myne enmy, sir Arthure hymse seluene !
It es none honour to me to owttray hys knyghttez,
Thoghe 3e bee ırous mene, that ayres one his nedez ;
Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hym se thes wordez,
Ne ware it for reverence of my ryche table,
Thou sulde repent fulle rathe of thi ruyde wordez ! 1332
Siche a rebawde as thowe rebuke any lordez,
Wyth theire retenuz arrayede, fulle realle and noble !
Here wille I suggourne, whilles me lefe thynkes,
And sythene seke in by Sayne with solace ther-aftere ;
Ensegge all tha cetese be the salte strandez,
And seyne ryde in by Ron, that rynnez so faire,
And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doune the walles ;
I salle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,
His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hymse lykes !”

“Now, certez,” sais sir Wawayne, “myche wondyre
haue I, 1342
That syche an alfyne as thow dare speke syche wordez !
I had leuer thene alle Fraunce, that heuede es of rewmes,
flyghte with the faythefully one felde be oure one.”

Than answers sir Gayous fulle gobbede wordes,—
Was eme to the emperour, and erle hymse selfene,—
“Euere ware thes Bretouns braggers of olde !” 1348
GAWAYN SMITES OFF THE HEAD OF GAYOUS.

Loo! how he brawles hyme for hys bryghte wedes,
As he myghte bryttyne vs alle with his brande ryche!
3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy there he standes!"

Than greuyde sir Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352
Graythes to-warde the gome with grucchande herte;
With hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,
And sterttes owtte to hys stede, and with his stale wendes!
Thurghe the wacches they wente, thes wirchipfulle knyghtez,
And fyndez in theire fare-waye wonedyrlyche many;
Ouer the watyre they wente by wyghtnesse of horses,
And tuke wynde as they walde by the wodde hemmes.
Than folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360
And of the Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes,
Chasede thurghe a champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez,
Tille a cheefe forest, one schalke whitte horses.
Bot a freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364
Come fortherrmaste on a fresone, in flawmande wedes;
A faire floreschite spere in fewtyre he castes,
And folowes faste one owre folke, and freschelye ascryez,

Than sir Gawayne the gude appone a graye stede,
He gryppes hym a grete spere, and graythely hyme hittez;
Thurghe the guttez in-to the gorre he gyrdes hym ewynce,
That the groundene stele gyledez to his herte! 1371
The gome and the grette horse at the grounde lyggez,
fülle gryselyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez.
Thane presez a preker ine, fulle prouedly arayede,
That beres alle of pourpour, palyde with syluer :
Byggly on a broune stede he profers fulle large. 1376
He was a paynyme of Perse that thus hyme persuide.
Sir Boys vn-abaiste alle he buskes hyme a-gaynes,
With a bustous launce he berez hyme thurghe,

That the breme and the brade schelde appone the bente lyggez! 1380
And he bryngez furthie the blade, and bownez to his felowez.
Thanesir Feltemour of myghte, a man meeklyle praysede, Was mouede one his manere, and manacede fulle faste; He graythes to sir Gawayne graythely to wyrche, 1384 ffor grefe of sir Gayous, that es one grounde louede. Thane sir Gawayne was glade; agayne hym he rydez, Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hym hyttez; The knyghte one the coursere he cleuved in sondyre, 1388 Clenlyche fro the crowne his corse he dyeusyde, And thus he killez the knyghte with his kydd wapene!

Than a rycheman of Rome relyede to his byerns,—
“It salle repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthire!
3one are bolde bosturs, that syche bale wyrkez; 1393
It be-felle hym fulle foule, that thame so fyrrste namede.”

Thane the riche Romayns retournes thaire brydilles
To thaire tentis in tene, telles thaire lordez
How sir Marschalle de Mowne es on the monte lefede, flore-justyde at that journee, for his grett japez.
Bot thare chasez one oure mene cheualrous knyghtez,
fiyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes, 1400
ffaste to a foreste ouer a felle watyr,
That fillez fro the falow see fyfty myle large.
Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,
Of the cheualrye cheefe of the kyngez chambyre, 1404
Seese them chase oure mene, and changene thaire horsez,
And choppe doune cheftaynes, that they moste chargeye.

Thane the enbuschement of Bretons brake owte atones,
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 1408
Arrestede of the Romayns, that by the fyrrthe rydez,
Alle the realeste renkes that to Rome lengez;
Thay iche on the enmyse and egerly strykkys,
Erles of Inglande, and “Arthure!” ascryes, 1412
Thrughe brenezand bryghte scheldez, brestez theythyrle,
Bretons of the bokleste with thaire bryghte swerdz.
Thare was Romayns ouer-redyne, and ruydly wondyde,
Arrestede as rebawdez, with ryotous knyghteze! 1416
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys!
To the senatour Petyr a sandes-mane es commyne,
And saide, "sir, sekyrly, joun seggez are supprysside!"

Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,
And sett sodanly one ooure seggez, by the salte strandez;
Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttille,
Bot 3it the banerettez bolde, and bachellers noble, 1424
Brekes that battailles with brestez of stedes;
Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes!
The Romaynes redyes thane, arrayez thame better,
And al to-ruscheez ooure mene withe theire ryste horsez,
Arestede of the richest of the Rounde Table,
Ouer-rydez ooure rerewarde, and grette rewthe wyrkes!

Thane the Bretons on the bente habyddez no lengere,
Bot fleede to the foreste, and the feelde leuede; 1432
Sir Beryll es borne downe and sir Boice takene,
Sir Beryll is borne down and Sir Boice taken,
but again they make a little stand,
grieving for the loss of their leader, and pray for succour.

Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde!

Than commez sir Idrus, armede vp at alle ryghttez,
Wytli fyue hundrethe mene appone faire stedes, 1440
Sir Idrus comes to their aid with five hundred men.

Myche brodely brochez hithe stedes,
Sir Gawaine laments the check which Arthur's men had received.

We hafe bene chased to daye, and chulled as hares,
Rebuyked with Romaynes appone theire ryche stedez,
Thane sais sir Gawayne, "so me God helpe!
Sir Gawaine laments the check which Arthur's men had received.

And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wrecches! 1446
I luke neuer one my lorde the dayes of my lyfe,
And weso lytherly hymelhelpe, that hymesowelelykede!"

Thane the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedez,
And boldly in batelle appone the bent rydes; 1450
The British return to the fray.

Alle the ferse mene be-fore frekly ascerys,
The Romans prepare themselves against them.
sfærkand in the foreste, to freschene thame selfene.

The Romaynes thane redly arrayes theme bettyre,
GAWAYN FIGHTS VALIANTLY.

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez their wapyns,
By the ryche reuare, and rewles the pople;
And with reddour sir Boice es in areste haldene. 1456

Now thei semblde vnsaughte by the salte strandez;
Saddly theis sekere menn settys theire dynttez,
With lufty launcez one loftey they lyychene to-gedyres,
In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes. 1460

Thare ware gomes thurgh-e-girde with grundyne wapynes,
Griseley gyspande with grychande lotes!
Grte lordez of Greke grefide so hye;
Swyftly with swerdys, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464

Swappez doune sffulle sweperlye swelltande knyghtez,
That alle swellttzez one swarthe, that they ouer-swyngene,
So many sweys in soghe swomande att ones!

Syr Gawewayne the graceys fulle graythelye he wyrrkes,
The gretteste he gretee wythi gryeslye wondes;
Wythi Galutli he gyrdz doune fulle galyarde knyghtez,
fiore greefe of the grett lordez so grymlye he srykez!

He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472
Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene;
He ryfez the rancke stelze, he ryghttez their brenez,
And refte themethe ryche mane, and rade to his strenghes.
The senator Peter thane perswede hym afytre, 1476
Thurghethe presse of the pople, wythi his pryce knyghttes;
Appertly fore the prysoner proynes his strenghes,
Wythi prerekz the proudeste that to the presse lengez;
Wrothely one the wrange handezsir Gawayne he srykkez,
Wythi a wapene of were vnwyanylye hym e hittez; 1481
The breny one the bakhalfe he brystez in sonydre!
Bot jyt he broghte forthe sir Boyce, for alle their bale biernez!

Rejoyced at this the British press on more boldly.

Thane the Bretones boldly braggene their tromppez,
And fore blysse of sir Boyce, was broghte owtte of bandez,
Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghtez; 1486
With brandez of brone stelze they brettened maylez;
Thay stekede stedys in stoure with stelene wapynes,
And allestewed wyth strenghe, that stode theme agaynes!

Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne thane "Arthure!" ascryeex,

Assemblez one the senatour wyth sextene knygghtez,

Of the sekereste mene that to oure syde lengede. 1492

Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,

ffoynes faste att the fore breste with flawmorde swerdez,

And feghttes faste att the fronte freschely thare-aftyre;

ffelles fele on the felde appone the ferrere syde, 1496

ffey on the faire felde by thar fresche strandez.

Bot sir Idrus fyzt Ewayne anters hyme seluene,

And enters in anyly, and egyrly strik ez,

Sekez to the senatour and sesez his brydille, 1500

Vnsaughtely he saide hyme these sittande wordez,—

"Selde the, sir, zapely, jife thou thi lyfe zernez,

fforegyfetz that how gyffe may, thou zeme now the selfenze;

ffore dredelez dreche thow, or droppe any wylez, 1504

Thow salle dy this daye thorowe dyntt of my handez!"

"I ascente," quod the senatour, "so me Criste helpe!"

So that I be safe broghte be-fore the kynge seluene;

Raunsone me resonabillye, as I may ouer-reche, 1508

Aftyre my renttze in Rome may redyly forthire."

Thane answers sir Idrus with austeryne wordez,

"Thow salle hafe condycyone, as the kynge lykes,

Whene thow comes to the kyth there the courte haldez;

In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513

To be killydeat his commandment his knyghttez be-fore."

Thay ledde hyme furthe in the rowte, and lached ofe his wedez,

Lefte hym wyth Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire.

O-lawe in the launde thane, by the lythe strandez,

Sir Lucius lygge-mene 1 loste are fore euer!

The senatour Peter es prysoner takyne! 1519

Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many price knyghteze,

And myche pople wyth alle perischede thame selfenze!

ffor presse of the passage, they plungede 2 at onez!

Thare myghte mene see Romaynez rewfully wondye,

1 Or legge-mene. 2 MS. repeats they plungede.

Sir Idrus, with sixteen knyghtez, attacks the senatour,
Ouer- redeyne with renkes of the Round Table! 1524
In the raike of the furthe they rightene theire brenys,
That rane alle one reede blode redylye alle ouer;
They raughte in the rerewarde fulle ryotous knyghtez,
for raunsone¹ of rede golde and realle stedys; 1528
Radly relayes, and restez theire horsez,
In rowtte to the ryche kyng they rade al at onez.

A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to the kyng telles,—
"Sir, here commez thy messangerez with myrthez fro
the mountez, 1532
Thay hafe bene machede to daye with mene of the marchez,
ffore-maglede in the marras with meruailous knyghtez!
We hafe foughtene in faithe, by 3one fresche strandez,
With the frekkeste folke that to thi foo langez; 1536
ffyfty thosanne one felde of ferse mene of armez,
Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lefede!
We hafe eschewede this chekke, thurghe chance of oure
Lorde,
Of tha cheualrous mene that chargede thy pople! 1540
The cheefe chauncelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,
Wille aske the chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfe;
And the senatour Petire to presoner es takyne.
Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe 1544
Commezprekande in the presse, with thy pryssknyghtez,
With pouerte in thi presone theire payne to drye.
I be-seke 3ow, sir, say whate 3owte lykes,
Whethire 3e suffyre theme saughte, or sone deleyuerde.
3e may haue fore the senatour sextie horse chargede
Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekyrly payede,
And for the cheefe chauncelere, the cheualere noble,
Charottez chokkefulle charageyd with golde; 1552
The remenaunt of the Romaynez be in areste haldene,
Tille thiere renttez in Rome be rightewissly knawene.
I be-seke 3ow, sir, certyfye 3one lordez,
3if 3e wille send thame ouer the see, or kepe thame 3our
selfene.

¹ MS. raunsone.
Alle 3our sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leyde,
Sane sir Ewayne fytz Henry es in the side wondedde."

"Crist be thankyde," quod the kynge, "and hys clere modyre,
That 3owe comfortedde and helpede be crafte of hyme selvene;
Skilfulle skomfytuere he skiftez as hym lykez,
Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez;
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,
Alle es denyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille! 1564
I kwne the thanke for thy come, it confortes vs alle!
Sir knyghte," sais the conquerour, "so me Criste helpe!
I 3if the for thy thy3andez Tolouse the riche,
The tolle and the tachementez, tanernez and other, 1568
The towne and the tenementez with towrez so hye,
That towchez to the temporalte, whilles my tyme lastez.

Bot say to the senator I sende hyme thes wordez,
Thare salle no siluer hym saue, bot Ewayne recouere;
I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,
Than the seegge ware seke, that es so sore woundedde;
I sall disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe! 1575
And sett theme fulle solyatarie, in sere kyngez landez:
Salle he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,
Ne sitt in the assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris; 1580
ffor it comes to no kynge that conquerour es holdene,
To comone with his captifs fore couatys of siluer;
It come neuer of knyghtede, knawe it 3if hyme lyke,
To carpe of coseri, whene captyfis ere takyne;
It aughte to no presoners to prese no lordez,
Ne come in presens of pryncez, whene partyes are mouede.
Comaunde 3one constable, the castelle that 3emes,
That he be elenclyhe kepede, and in close haldene;
He sall hawe maundement to-morne or myddaye be rounzene,
To what marchethay sallermerke, with mangeretolengene." 1587

Thay couayte this captyfe with clene mene of armez,
And kend hyme to the constable, aHs the kynge byddex; The knights obey, and then
ARTHUR ORDERS THE PRISONERS TO BE TAKEN TO PARIS.

Arthur orders the prisoners to be taken to Paris.

Arthur greatly commends his knights for their boldness, and promises them rewards.

In the morning Sir Cador and his knights are bid to take the prisoners back to Paris, and to give them into the care of the provost.

The British knights depart towards Chartres.

But the emperor had dispatched a chosen band to intercept them.

And seyne to Arthure they ayre, and egerly hym towchez. The answere of the emperour, irows of dedez. 1592
Thane sir Arthure, one erthe atheliste of othere, At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—
"Me aughte to honour theme in erthe ouer alle other thyngesz, That thus in myne absens awnters theme selfene ; 1596 I salle theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe!
And gyfe theme landys fulle large, whare theme beste lykes; Thay sallenoghte losse, onethis layke, 3if me lyfe happene, That thus are lamede for my lufe be this lythe strandez."

Bot in the clere daweyng, the dere kynge hym selfene Comaundyd sir Cadore with his dere knyghttes,
Sir Cleremus, sir Cleremonde, with clene mene of armez,
Sir Clowdmur, sir Clegis, to connyaye theis lordez; 1604
Sir Boyce and sir Berelle with baners displayede,
Sir Bawdwyne, sir Bryane, and sir Bedwere the ryche,
Sir Raynalde and sir Richere, RAW ouede childyre,
To ryde with the Romaynes in rowtte wyth theire feres.

"Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,
Wyth Petir the pryssonere and his price knyghttez;
Be-teche tham the proueste, in presens of lordez,
O payne and o perelle that penses there-too, 1612
That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,
Warded of warantizez with wyrcchipfulle knyghttez;
Wagge hyme wyghte mene, and woonde for no siluyre;
I haffe warnede that wy, be ware 3ife hyme lykes!"

Now bownes the Bretones, als the kynge byddez, 1617
Buskez theire batelles, theire baners displayez;
To-wardez Chartris they chese, thes cheualrous knyghttez,
And in the champayne lande fulle faire thay eschwede:
for the emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfene Sir Vtolfe and sir EWandyr, two honourable kyngez,
Eres of the Oriente, with austeryne knyghttez,
Of the awntrouseste mene that to his oste lengede, 1624
Sir Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,
The kynge of Surye hym selfe with Sarzynes ynowe,
The senatour of Sutere wyth sowmes fulle huge, 1627
Whas assygnede to that courte be sent of his peres,
Traise to-warde Troyes the tresone to wyrke,
To hafe be-trappede with a trayne oure travelande knyghttez,
That hade persayfede that Peter at Parys sulde lenge,
In presonne with the prouoste, his paynez to drye. 1632
ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners displayede,
In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge;
Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,
To pyke vp the presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.
Sir Cadore of Cornewalle commaundez his peris, 1637
Sir Clegis, sir Cleremuz, sir Cleremownnde the noble,
"Here es the close of Clyme with clewes so hye;" 1640
Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large;
Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and other,
That no skathelle in the skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre; 1644
Loke 3e skyfte it so that vs no skathe lympe,
ffor na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer."
Now they hye to the holte, thes harageous knyghttez,
To herkene of the hye mene to helpene thes lordez;
ffyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,
Houande one the hye waye by the holte hemmes. 1648
With knyghtly contenaunce Sir Clegis hym selfene
Kryes to the companye, and carpes thes wordez,—
"Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or other;" 1652
Wille kyth for his kynge lufe craftes of armes?
We are comene fro the kynge of this lythe ryche,
That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in erthe,
His ryche retenuz here alle of his Round Table,
To ryde with that realle in rowtt where hyme lykes;
We seke justynghe of werre, 3if any wille happynge, 1657
Of the jolyeste mene ajuggede be lordez;

1 MS. the tresone the tresone.
MORTE ARTHURE.
An earl of the Roman party upbraids Arthur and his knights.

Sir Clegis answers him, and boasts that he will punish well the Romans.

He desires three courses of war with any knights whom they will send.

The king of Syria insinuates that Sir Clegis may not be of noble ancestry.

Sir Clegis replies scornfully.

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or other,
That for the emperour lufe wille aventure hym selfene."
And ane erle thane in angere answeres hym sone,—
"Me angles at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,
That thus in his error occüpes thes rewmes;
And owtrayes the emperour, his ethely lorde !

The araye and the ryalltez of the Rounde Table
Es wytli rankour rehersede in rewmes fulle many;
Of oure renttez of Rome syche resoune he halys,
He1 salle zife resoune fulle rathe, zif vs reghte happens,
That many salle repente that in his rowtte rydez,
ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene !"

"A !" sais sir Clegis thane, "so me Criste helpe !
I knawe be thi carpynge a cowntere the semes !
Bot be thou auditoure, or erle, or emperour thi selfene,
Appone Arthurez by-halue I answere the sone : 1674
The renke so realle, that rewlez vs alle,
The ryotous mene and the ryche of the Rounde Table,
He has arayzed his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,
ffor he wylle gyfe a rekenyng that rewe salle afyre,
That alle the ryche salle repeite that to Rome langez,
Or the rerage be requit 2 of rentez that he claymez !
We crafe of your curtaisie three coursez of werre, 1681
And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to your selfene !
3e do bott trayne vs to daye wytli trofelande wordez !
Of syche trauaylande mene trecherye me thynkes ! 1684
Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,
Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake zif 3owe lykes."

Thane sais the kynge of Surry, "Alls saue me oure Lorde !
3if thow hufe alle the daye, thow bees noghte deleyuerede,
Bot thow sekerly ensure with certeyne knyghttez, 1689
That thi cote and thi breste be knawene with lordez,
Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde with londez."

"Sir kyng," sais sir Clegys, "fulle knyghttly thow askez:
I trowe it be for cowardys thow carpes thes wordez :

* MS. Ne. 2 Looks like requiter in MS.
Sir Clegis informs Sir Cador of the enemy.

Myne armez are of ancestryle enueryde with lordez,
And has in banere bence borne sene sir Brut tyme;
At the cite of Troye that tymme was ensegede, 1696
Ofte scene in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,
syro the Borghte broghte vs and alle our bolde elders,
To Bretayne the braddere, with-in chippe-burdez.”

“Sir,” sais sir Sextenour, “saye what the lykez,
And we selle suffyre the, als vs beste semes; 1701
Luke thi troumppez be trussed, and trofulle no lengere,
for thoghe thou tarye alle the daye, the tyddes no bettyr!
for there selle neuer Romayne, that in my rotitt rydez,
Be with rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne!”

Thane sir Clegis to the kynge a lyttile enclinede,
Kayres to sir Cadore, and knyghtly hym tellez,— 1707
“We have foundene in zone firthe, floreschede with leues,
The flour of the faireste folke that to thi foo langez,
ffifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez,
That faire are fewteride on froute vndyr zone fre bowes;
They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners displayed,

In zone bechene wode appone the waye sydes.
Thay hase the furthe for-sette alle of the faire watyre,
That rayfully of force feghte vs byhowys;
for thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to telle, 1716
Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as the lykes.”

“Nay,” quod Cador, “so me Criste helpe!
It ware schame that we scholde schone for so lyttyle!
Sir Lancelott sall neuer laughe, that with the kyng
lengez,
That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe;
I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,
for drede of any doggesone in zone dyne schawes!”

Sir Cador thane knyghtly comforthes his pople, 1724
And with corage kene he karpes thes wordes,—
“Thynk one the valyaunt prynce that vesettez vs ener,
With landez and lordcheppez, ware vs beste lykes;
That has vs duchetês delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,
Sir Cador encourages his men.

He dubs some of them knights.

To certain of them he gives the prisoner in charge.

If he is defeated, they are to convey him to some castle, or to Arthur.

The British prepare for the fight.

The fight begins.

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,
Grewhoudaz and grett horse, and alkyne gammes,
That gaynez tille any gome, that vndyre God leuez;
Thynke one riche renoune of the Rounde Table, 1732
And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romayne in erthe;
fleyne 3ow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,
Bot luke 3e fyghte faythefully, frekes 3ouef selfene;
I walde be wellyde alle qwye, and quarterde in sondre,
Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge.” 1737

Than this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,
Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and other,
That ayerez were of Esexe, and alle thase este marchez;
Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in arnez, 1741
Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, thise harageous kneghttez.
Than the souerayne assignede certayne lordez,
Sir Wawayne, sir Vryelle, sir Bedwere the ryche, 1744
Raynallde and Richeere, and Rowlandez childyre,—
“Takez kepe one this pryunce with 3ouer price kynghtez,
And 3ife we in the stour withstondene the better,
Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire; 1748
And 3if the chaunce falle that we bee ouer-charggede,
Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse 3ouer selfene;
Or ryde to the riche kynge 3if 3ow roo happyne, 1751
And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez.”

And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez theire scheldez,
Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes theire launcez.
Thus he fittez his folke, and to the felde rydez,
ffif hundreth one a frounte fewtrede at onez! 1756

With trompes thay trine, and trappede stedes,
With cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes;
Schokkes in with a schakke, and schontez no langere,
There schawes ware scheene vndyr the schire eynez.
And thane the Romaynez rowtte remowes a lyttlle,
Raykes with a rerewarde thas realle knyghttez; 1762
So raply thay ryde thare, that alle the rowte ryngez,
Of ryues and rannke stele, and ryche golde maylez.
Thane schotte owtte of the schawe schiltrounis many, 
With scharpe wapyuns of were schotande at ones :
The kynge of Lebe be-fore the wawarde he ledez, 
And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez.  1768 
The king of Lebe leads on the enemy.

Than this cruelle kynge castis in fewtire, 
Kaghte hym a couerde horse, and his course haldez, 
Beris to sir Berille, and brathely hym hittes, 
Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne !  
He attacks Sir Berill and slays him.
The gome and the grette horse at the grounde liggez, 
And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym the saule !  
Sir Cador is overcome by his loss.

Thane this cruelle kynge castis in fewtire, 
Kaghte Iryrn a coue?de horse, and his course haldez, 
He attacks sir Berille, and brathely hym hittes, 
Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne !  
He attacks Sir Berill and slays him.
The gome and the grette horse at the grounde liggez, 
And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym the saule !  
Sir Cador is overcome by his loss.

Thane schotte owtte of the schawe schiltrounis many, 
With scharpe wapyuns of were schotande at ones :
The kynge of Lebe be-fore the wawarde he ledez, 
And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez.  1768 
The king of Lebe leads on the enemy.

"3one lordes es lyghttede ! me lykes the bettyre ! 
Healle noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his] 
bones !"  
Sir Cador vows vengeance.

"3one kynge," said Cador, "karpes fulle large,  1784 
Be-cause he killyd this kene ; Criste hafe thi saule ! 
Sir Cador vows vengeance.

Healle hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe !  
Sir Cador vows vengeance.
Or I kaire of this coste, wealle encontre ones ! 
So may the wynde weile tunne, I quytte hym or ewyne, 
Sir Cador vows vengeance.
Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez !"  1789 
Sir Cador vows vengeance.

Thane sir Cador the kene knyghttly he wyrkez, 
Cryez, " A ! Cornewale," and castez in fewtere, 
Girdez streke thourghe the stour on a stede ryche !  
Many steryne mane he steride by strenghe of hyme one !  
When his lance is broken he fights with his sword.
Whene his spere was sprongene, he spede hym fulle 3erne, 
Swappede owtte with a swerde, that swykede hym neuer, 
Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghttez ;  
Wyrkez his ine)wayfare fulle werkand sydez,  1797 
And hewes of the hardiaste halsez in sondyre, 
That alle blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez !  
So many biernez the bolde broughte owt of lyfe,  1800
The king of Lebe threatens Sir Cador.

Then the king of Lebe ironically praises his deeds.
The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray.
The king of Lebe comes against them.
He makes great havoc among the new men.

The king of Lebe threatens Sir Cador.

Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet.
The heathen king falls to the

The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray.

The king of Lebe comes against them.

Had not Sir Clegis and Sir Clement come, the new men had gone to nought.

Then the king of Lebe ironically praises his deeds.

The heathen king falls to the

Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet.

The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray.

The king of Lebe comes against them.

He makes great havoc among the new men.

The king of Lebe threatens Sir Cador.

Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet.

The heathen king falls to the

The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray.

The king of Lebe comes against them.

He makes great havoc among the new men.

The king of Lebe threatens Sir Cador.

Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet.

The heathen king falls to the

The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray.

The king of Lebe comes against them.

He makes great havoc among the new men.

The king of Lebe threatens Sir Cador.

Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet.
And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer!
Thane sir Cador the kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836
"Thow has corne botte, sir kynge, thare God gyfe the sorowe,
Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse!
Kele the nowe in the claye, and comforthe thi selfene!
Thow skornede vs lang ere with thi skornefulle wordez,
And nowe has thow cheued so; it es thyne awene skathe!

Holde at thow hente has, it harmez bot lyttille,
for hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille."

The kyng of Surry thane es sorowlle in herte, 1844
fforsake of thissoueraygne, that thus was supprissede;
Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatours manye:
Vnsaughtyly they sette thane apponeouresere knyghttez;
Sir Cador of Cornewaile he counterez thame sone, 1848
With his kynde companye clenlyche arrayede;
In the frount of the fyrthe, as the waye forthis,
flyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones!

Thare was at the assemble certayne knyghttez, 1852
Sore wondede sone appone sere halfes;
The sekereste Sarzanez that to that sorte lengede,
Be-hynde the sadyllcs ware sette sex fotte large;
They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,
Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,
Thurghe breynys browdene brestez they thirllede,
Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre;
Blasons blode and blankes they hewene, 1860
With brandez of browne stele brankkand stedez!
The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,
The bente and the brode felde alle one blode rynnys!
Be thane sir Cayous the kene a capitayne has wonnene,
Sir Clegis clynes in, and clekes another; 1865
The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire the kynge selfene,
That was keye of the kythe of alle that coste ryche,
Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene, 1868
With the erle of Affryke and other grette lوردes.
The kynge of Surry the kene to sir Cador es 3eldene,1
The synchalle of Sotere to Segramoure hym selfene.
When the cheualrye saw their cheftanes were nommene,
To a cheese foreste they chesene their wayes, 1873
And felede them so feynte, they falle in the greues,
In the feryrne of the fyrthe, fore ferde of our pople.
Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,
To rype vpe the Romaynez ruydlyche wondyde, 1877
Schownttes affyre mene, haragoose knygghtez,
Be humadrethez they hewede doune be the holte eynyss!
Thus our e cheualrous mene chasz the pople; 1880
To a castelle they eschewede a fewe that eschappede.

Thane relyez the renkez of the Rounde Table,
ffor to ryotte the wode, ther the duke restez;
Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte yp their feres, 1884
That in the fightynge be-fore fay ware by-leuyde.
Sir Cador garte chare theym, and couere theme faire,
Kariede theme to the kynge with his beste knygghtez;
And passez vn-to Paresche with presoners hym selfene,
Be-toke thyme the proveuste, pryncez and other; 1889
Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,
Bot tournes tytte to the kynge, and hym wyth tunque telles.
“Syre,” sais sir Cador, “a caas es be-fallene; 1892
We hafe cownterezde to day, in 3one coste ryche
With kyngez and kayseres, krouelle and noble,
And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayede!
Thay hade at 3one foreste forsette vs the wayes, 1896
At the furthe in the fyrthe, with fere mene of armes;
Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foyynede with sperys,
One felle with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe.
The kynge of Lebe es laide, and in the felde leuyde,
And manye of his lege mene that yare to hym langede!
Other lordez are laughte of vncouthe ledes; 1902
We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whilles the lykez.
Sir Vtere and sir Ewaynedyre, theis honourable
knyghttez,
Be a nawntere of armes Inoneke has nommenene,
With erlez of the Oryentte, and austerene knyghttez;
Of awncestrye the beste mene that to the oste langede;
The senator Barouns es kaughte with a knyghtte,
The capitayne of Cornette, that crewelle es haldene,
The syneschalle of Sutere vnsaughte wyth thes other,
The kynge of Surry hym selfene, and Sarazenes. 1911
Bot fay of ours in the felde a fourtene knyghttez,
I willenoghte feynene forbere, bot faythfully tellene;
Sir Berelle es one, a banerette noble,
Was killyde at the fyreste come with a kynge ryche;
Sir Alidoyke of Towelle, with his tende knyghteze, 1916
Emange the Turkys was tynte, and in tyme fondene;
Gude sir Mawrelle of Mauncez, and Mawrene his brother,
Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, with meruailous knyghttez."

Thane the worthy kynge wrythes, and wepede with
his eghne, 1920
Karpes to his cosyne sir Cador theis wordez,—
"Sir Cador, thi corage confundez vs alle!
Kowardely thow castez owtte alle my beste knyghttez!
To putte mene in perille, it es no pryce holdene, 1924
Bot the partyes ware purnayede, and powere arayede;
When they ware stade on a strenghe, thou sulde hafe
with-stondene,
Bot 3if thowe wolde alle my steryne stroye for the nonys!"
"Sir," sais sir Cador, "3e knowe wele 3owr selfene;
3e are kynge in this kythe, karpe whatte 3ow lykys!
Salle neuer vpbrayde me, that to thi burde langes, 1930
That I sulde blyne fore their e boste, thi byddynge to
wyche;
Whene any stirttez to stale, stuffe thame the bettere,
Ore thei will e bestonayede, and stroyede in 3one strayte
londez. 1933
I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,
And in daungere of dede fore dyuerse knyghttez,
I hafe no grace to thi gree, bot syche grett wordez; 1936

1 MS. eughne.
3if I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre."

3ofe sir Arthure ware angerde, he answers faire,
"Thow has doughttily donne, sir duke, with thi handez,
And has donne thy deuer with my dere knyghttez;
fiir-thow thoue arte demyde, with dukses and erlez, 1941
fiir one of the doughtyest that dubbeth was euere!
Thare es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongene;
Thow arte apparant to be ayere, are one of thi childlyre;
Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake salle I neuer!" 1945

Then gerte he in his awene tente a table be sette,
And tryede in with tromppez travaillede biernes;
Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez, 1948
Swythe semly in syghte with syluerene dischees.
Whene the senatours harde saye that it so happenede,
They saide to the emperour, "thi seggez are suppryssede!
Sir Arthure, thyne enmye has owterayede thi lordez,
That rode for the rescowe of zone riche knyghttez! 1953
Thow dosse bot tynez thi tyme, and tormenttez thi pople;
Thow arte be-trayede of thi mene, that moste thow on
traystede.
That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euere." 1956
Than the emperour irus was angerde at his herte,
flor oure valyant biernes siche prowesche had wonnene.
With kynge and with kaysere to consayle they wende,
Souverayngez of Sarazenez, and senatours manye; 1960
Thus he sembllez fulle sone certayne lordez,
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—
"My herte sothely es sette, assente zif zowe lykes,
To seke in-to Sexone, with my sekyre knyghttez, 1964
To fyghte withi my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,
3if I may fynde the freke with-yn the foure halnez;
Or entire in-to Avguste awnters to seke, 1967
And byde withi my balde mene with-yn the burgh the ryche;
Riste vs and ruelle, and ryotte oure selfene,
Lende thare in delytte in lordechippez ynewe,
To sir Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghteez, 1971
With lordez of Lumberdyke, to lette hymel the ways."
Bot owre wyse kyng es warre to wayttene his renkes,  
And wyesly by the woddex voydez his oste ;  
Gerte felschene his fyrze, flawmande fulle heghe,  
Trussene fulle traystely, and treunt there-afytre.  
1976
Sethene in-to Sessoyn, he soughpte at the gaynest,  
And at the surs of the sonne disseuerez his knyghtirez :  
forsette theme the cite appeone sere halfez,  
So-dayny on iche halfe, with seyne grett stales.  
1980
Anely in the vale a vaiwearde enbusches ;  
Sir Valyant of Vyleris, with valyant knyghtiez,  
Be-fore the kyngez visage made siche avowez,  
To venquye by victorie the vescownte of Rome !  
1984
fior-thi the kyng chargez hym, what chaunse so be-falle,  
Cheftayne of the cheekke, with chenalrous knyghtez,  
And sythyme meles with mouthe, that he moste traitez ;  
Demenys the medylwarde mensfully hyme selfene,  
sitthes his fote-mene, als hym faire thynkkes ;  
1989
On fronute in the fore breste, the flour of his knyghtez,  
His archers on aythere halfe he ordaynede ther-afytre  
To schake in a sheltrone, to schotte whene thame lykehz ;  
He arrayed in the rerewarde fulle rialle knyghtez,  
With renkkes renowned of the Rounde Table,  
Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neuer,  
The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe ;  
1996
Sir Cayous, sir Cleghis, and clene mene of armes,  
The kyng castes to kepe be thaa clere strandes.

Sir Lott and sir Launcelotte, thise lordly knyghtitez,  
Salle lenge on his lefte hande, wyth legyones ynewe,  
To meue in the morne-while, zif the myste happynne ;  
Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghtez,  
To kepe at the karfuke, to close in ther othere :  
2004
He plantez in siche placez pryncex and erlez,  
That no powere sulde passe be no preuen wayes.

Bot the emperour onone, with honourable knyghtez  
And erlez, enters the vale, awnters to seke,  
And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede ;  
2008
And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe,
LUCIUS PREPARES FOR THE BATTLE.

Oure burlyche bolde kyng e appone the bente howes, With his bataile one brede, and baners displayede. He hade the ceté for-sett appone sere halfes, 2012 Bothe the clewez and the clyfiez with clene mene of armez! The mosse and the marrasse, the mounttez so hye, With gret multytude of mene, to marre hym in the wayes. Whene sir Lucius sees, he sais to his lordez, 2016 "This traytowr has treunt this tresone to wyche!
He has the ceté forsett appone sere halfez, Alle the clewez and the cleyffiez with clene mene of armez! Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, 2020 Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer!
Thanse this rychc mane rathe arayez his byernez, Rewlede his Romaynez, and realle knyghtez;
Buschez in the avawmewarde the vescounte of Rome, ffro Viterbe to Venyse, thes volyante knyghtez: 2025 Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,
With egles alouer, enamelede of sable;
Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkyne thare-aftyre,
Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez, 2029 ffor dauncesynge of Ducheme, and dynynge of pypez, Alle dyynned fo ryn dyne that in the dale houede. A
nd thane sir Lucius on lowde said lordlyche wordez, "Thynke one the myche renownne of 3our rychc fadyrs;
And the riatours of Rome, that regned with lordez;
And the renkez ouer-rane alle that regned in erthe, Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of armez;
In eueriche a viage the victorie was haldene; 2037 In sette alle the Sarazenes with-in seuen wyntter,
The parte ffro the porte Iaffe to Paradyse 3atez!
Thoghe a rewme be rebelle, we rekke it bot lyttille!
It es resone and righte the renke be restreyned! 2041 Do dresse we thare-fore, and byde we no langere, sfoere dredlesse with-owttyne dowtte, the daye schalle be ourez!"
When theise wordez was saide, the Walsche kyngę
hym selfene
Whas warre of this wyderwyne, that werrayede his
knyghttez:
Brothely in the vale with voyce he ascryez,—
“Viscownte of Valeznewe, enuuyous of dedys,
The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be renengede!
Vnuenquiste for this place voyde schalle I neuer!”
Thane the vyscownte valiante, with a noyse noble,
A bore the avawewarde, enneronnde his horse;
With a dragone engowschede, drefulle to schewe,
Deuorande a dolphyne with doefull swerde;
In sene that oure soueraygne snide be distroyede,
And alle done of dawez with dynttez of swerdez;
Thane the comlyche kyngę castez in fewtyre,
With a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene
A-bowne thespayre a spanne, emang the schortte rybbys,
That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez!
The blode sprente owtte and sprede as the horse spryngez,
And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spakes he no more!
And thus has sir Valiant haldene his a-vowez,
And venqwyste the viscownte, theate victor was haldene!
Thane sir Ewayne sir Fytz Vrieneffulle enkerlye rydez
Onone to the emperour his egle to towche;
Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe,
Braydez owt his brande with a blyth chere,
Reuerrsse it redelye, and awaye rydys;
Sferkez in withi the fewle in his faire handez,
And fittez in freelye one fronnte with his feris.
Now buskez sir Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene
To sir Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hyme hyttez;
Thurgh the pawnce and platez he percede the maylez,
That the prowde penselle in his pawnche lengez!
The hede haylde owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,
Arthur calls upon the viscount of Valence, and threatens him with vengeance.
The viscount boldly prepares for the fray.
His device is a dragon devouring a dolphin.
The king lays his lance in rest, and pierces him through the short ribs.
And thus has Sir Valiant kept his vow.
Sir Ewain makes a bold attempt to reach the emperor.
Sir Lancelet slays the lord Lucius.
Thurgh e hawberke and hanche, with the harde wapyne! The stede and the steryne mane strykes to the grownde, Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez! "Me lykez wele," saiz sir Loti, "one lordez are delyuerede!

The lott lengez nowe on me, with leue of my lorde: To day salle my name be laide, and my life aftyre, Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that one zone lawnde houez!" Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle, Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche, Enjoynede with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe! Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-nother, Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, werrayande knyghtez, And wondes alle wathely, that in the waye stondez! ffyghttez with alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye, ffichene with fetheris thurghe the fyne maylez: Siche flyttynge es foule that so the flesche derys, That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedez; Dartes the Duche-mene daltene a3aynes, With fonez fliterede that flitt fulle frescly ther frekez, Siche flyttynge es foule that so the flesche derys, That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedez; So they scherenkene fore schotte of the scharppe arowes, That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones!

The British bowmen discharge their arrows. The Dutchmen throw darts.

But the giants make a terrible charge,
With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes, 
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez; 
Kylledo cou[n]serz and couerde stedes, 2115
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-jaynez, 
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys. 
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez, 2116
With crewelle contenauce he cryede fulle lowde,—

“With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes, 
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez; 
Kylledo cou[n]serz and couerde stedes, 
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-jaynez, 
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys. 
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez, 
With crewelle contenauce he cryede fulle lowde,—

“With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes, 
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez; 
Kylledo cou[n]serz and couerde stedes, 2115
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-jaynez, 
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys. 
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez, 
With crewelle contenauce he cryede fulle lowde,—

“With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes, 
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez; 
Kylledo cou[n]serz and couerde stedes, 2115
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-jaynez, 
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys. 
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez, 
With crewelle contenauce he cryede fulle lowde,—

“With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes, 
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez; 
Kylledo cou[n]serz and couerde stedes, 2115
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-jaynez, 
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys. 
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez, 
With crewelle contenauce he cryede fulle lowde,—

“With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes, 
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez; 
Kylledo cou[n]serz and couerde stedes, 2115
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-jaynez, 
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys. 
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez, 
With crewelle contenauce he cryede fulle lowde,—
SIR CAYOUS WOUNDED BY A COWARD.

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez
Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stedez;
Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys,
fiacez feteled vn-faire in filterede lakes,
Alle crayed for-trodyne with trappede stedez, 2148
The faireste fygured folde\(^1\) that fygurede was euer,
ÁHs ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones! 2152

The Romans begin to retreat, and Arthur presses on them.

Sir Cayous rides to a king and thrusts him through with his lance,
Sir Kayous, sir Clegis, with clene mene of armes, 2157
Enounters theme at the clyffe with clene mene of armes;
ffyghttes faste in the fyrh, frythes no wapene,
ffelled at the firste come fyfe hundretthe at ones! 2158
And when they fande themy foresett with our fers knyghtez,
ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre;
ffeghttez with alle the frappe, foynes with speres,
ffieghtrez with alle the frappe, frythes no wapene,

And when they fande themy foresett with our fers knyghtez, 2161

but is sorely wounded by a coward knight.

Bot Kayous at the in-come was kepyd vn-fayre
With a cowarde knyghte of the kythe ryche; 2172
At the turnyng that tym the traytoure hym hitte
In thorowe the felettes, and in the flawnke aftyre,
That the boustous launce the bewells attamede,
That braste at the brawlynge, and brake in the myddys.
Sir Kayous knewe wele, be that kyde wounde, 2177
That he was dede of the dynte, and done owte of lyfe.

\(^1\) Or felde.
\(^2\) Or over.
Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,
One this ryalle his dede to reuenge;
"Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym sone,
Cleues hym wythli his clere brande clenchiche in sondire!
"Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt with thi handes,
I hade for-geffene the my dede, be Crist now of hewyne!"
He weyndes to the wyese kynge, and wynly hym gretes,
"I am wathely woundide, waresche mone I neuer!
Wirke nowe thi wirchiphe, as the worlde askes,
And brynge me to beryelle, byd I no more!"
Grete wele my ladye the qwene, jife the werlde happyne,
And alle the burliche birdes that to hir boure lengez,
And my worthily weife, that wretide me neuer,
Bid hire fore hir wyrchipe wirke for my saultte!"

The kyngez confessour come, with Criste in his handes,
ffor to comforthe the knyghte, kende hym the wordes.
The knyghte coueride on his knees with a kaunt herte,
And caughte his Creatoure that comfurthes vs alle!
Thane remmes the riche kynge fore rewthe at his herte,
Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge;
Presede in-to the plumpe, and withi a prynce metes,
That was ayere of Egipt in thos este marches;
Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre!
He broches euene thorowe the byerne, and the sadille bristes,
And at the bake of the blonke the bewelles entamede!
Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes a-nother,
The medille of that myghtty, that hym myche greuede;
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,
That the myddys of the mane on the mounte falles,
The tother halfe of the haunche on the horse leuyde.
Of that hurte, ah!s I hope, heles he neuer!
He schotte thorowe the schiltrouns with his scharpe wapene,
Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez;
Baneres he bare downne, bryttenede scheldes.
Brothely with browne stele his brethe he thare wrekes;
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenge,
Woundes these whydyrewyns, werrayede knyghttes,
Threppede thorow the thykkys thryttene sythis, 2216
Thryngez throly in the thrange, and chis enene aftyre!

Than sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrchipfulle knyghttz,
Wondide worthily wirchipfulle knyghttez!
ffighttez with Floreït that beste es of swerdez, 2232
Tille the fomande blode tille his fyste rynnes!

Than the Romayns releuyde, that are weare rebuykkyde,
And alle to-rattys oure mene with theire riste horsses;
ffore they see thaire cheftayne be chauffede so sore,
They chasse and choppedoune oure cheualrous knyghttes!
Sir Bedwre was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,
With a burlyche brannde, brode at the hiltes;
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynmys, 2240
And he rusches to the erthe, reowthe es the more!

Than the conquerour tuke kepe, and come with his strenghes
To reschewe the ryche mene of the Rounde Table,
To owttraye the emperour, 3if auntire it schewe, 2244
Ewyne to the egle, and "Arthure!" askryes.
The emperor thane eagerly at Arthure he strykez, 
Awkwarde on the umbere, and eagerly hym hittez!
The nakyde swerde at the nese noyes hym sare, 2248
The blode of [the] bolde kyng euer the breste rynnyes, 
Beblede at the brode schelde and the bryghte mayles!
Oure bolde kynge bowes the blonke be the bryghte brydylle, 
With his burlyche brande a buffete hym reches, 2252
Thourgh he brene and the breste with his bryghte wapynne, 
O-slanke doune fro the slote he slyttes at ones!
Thus endys the emperor of Arthure hondes, 
And alle his austeryne oste thare-ose ware affrayede!
Now they ferke to the fyrthe, a fewe that are leuede, 
ffor ferndnesse ofoure folke, by the fresche strandez!
The floure of ourse mene one fferant stedez 
ffolowes frekly on the frekes, thate ffrayede was neuer.
Than the kyde conquerour cryes fulle lowde,— 2261
"Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to thi selfene, 
That no captayne be-kepyde for none siluer, 
Or sir Kayous dede be cruelly vengede!" 2264
"Nay," sais sir Cador, "so me Criste helpe! 
Thare ne es kaysere ne kynge, that vndire Criste ryngnes, 
That I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez!" 
Thare myghtemen see chiflaynes, on chalke whittestedez, 
Chopp de doune in the chaas cheualrye noble; 2269
Romaynes the rycheste and ryalle kynges, 
Braste with ranke stele theire rybbys in sondyre! 
Braynes fore-brustene thurgh he burneste helmes, 2272
With brandez for-brittenede one brede in the launde.
They hewedode doune haythenemen with hiltedeswerdez, 
Be hole hundrethez on bye, by the holte eynyes! 
Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire 
ylues, 2276
Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senator of Rome!
Thane releuis the renkes of the Rounde Table, 
Be the riche reuare that rynnyes so faire; 
Lugegez thaym luftye by tha lyghte strandez, 2280
Alle on lawe in the lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes.
Arthur's men plunder the rich camp of the Romans.

Horses, camels, dromedaries, milk-white mules, and many marvellous beasts are captured.

The bodies of the emperor and the chief men of Rome are embalmed and wrapped in lead, enclosed in chests, and sent to Rome with their banners over them.

Two senators come barefoot and kneel before the conqueror.

Thay kaire to the karyage, and tuke whate them likes, Kamelles and sekadriises, and cofirs fulle riche, Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes, Howsyng and herbergage of heythene kyngez; They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuerse lordez, MoyBez mylke whitte, and mernayllous bestez, Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble, Ther are of the Oryent, with honourable kynges.

Bot sir Arthure onone ayeres ther-aftry Ewyne to the emperor, with honourable kyngis; Laughte hym vpe fulle lonelyly with lordlyche knyghttetz, And ledde hymne to the layere, thare the kyng lygges. Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordez, Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges, The Sowdane of Surry, and certayne kynges, Sexty of the cheefe senatours of Rome.

Thane they bussches and bawmede thaire honourliche kyngis,

Sewed them in sendelle sexti-faulde aftire, Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde Chawnge or chawffe, zif thay myghte escheffe; Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome, With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre, In whate countré thay kaire that knyghttesmyghte knawe Iche kyngye be his colours, in kythi whare [he] lengede. Onone one the secounde daye, sone by the morne, Twa senatours ther come, and certayne knyghttetz, Hodles fro the hethe, ouer the holte eynes, Barefote ouer the bente, with brondes so ryche, Bowes to the bolde kynge, and biddis hym the hiltes, Whethire he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde theyme on lyfe;

Knelyde be-fore the conquerour in kyrtilles allone; With carefullue contenance thay karpide these wordes,—

"Twa senatours we are, thi subgettez of Rome, That has sauede oure lyfe by theise salte strandys; Hyd vs in the heghe wode, thurghe the helpynge of Criste;
Be-sekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde; 2317
Grante vs lyffe and lyme with leberalle herte,
for his luffe that the lente this lordchipe in erthe!"
"I graunte," quod [the] gude kynge, "thurghe grace of
my selfene, 2320
I giffe 3owe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,
So 3e doo my message menskefully at Rome,
That ilke charge that I 3ow 3iffe here be-fore my cheeffe
knyghttez."
"3is," sais the senatours, "that salle we ensure, 2324
Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfille;
We salle lett for no ledes that lyffes in erthe,
fore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,
That ne salle lelely in lande thi letteres pronounce, 2328
for duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in the payne!"

T
he
a
ne the banerettez of Bretayne broghte theme to
tentes;
There barbourys ware bownne, with basyns one lofte,
With warme warie1 i-wys they wette theme fulle sone;
They schouene thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,
To rekkene theis Romaynes recreaunt and 3oldene;
For-thy schoue they theme to schewe, for skomfite of
Rome.
They coupylde the kyntes on kameles be-lyue, 2336
On asses and arrabyes, thes honourable kynges;
The emperoure for honoure, alle by hym one,
Euene appone ane olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere;
Be-kende them the captyfis, the kyng debide hym seffene,
And alle by-fore his kene mene karpede thees wordes,—
"Here are the kyntes," quod the kyng, "kaire ouer
the mownttez;
Mette fulle monne that 3e haue mekylle 3ernede,
The taxe and the trebutte of tene schore wynteres, 2344
That was tenefully tynte in tyme of oure elders.
Saye to the senatoure, the ecte that 3emes,
That I sende hym the somme, assaye how hym likes!

1 MS. wartire.
ARTHUR BURES HIS DEAD KNIGHTS.

Bott byde them neuer be so bolde, whylles my blode regnes,
Efte for to brawle theme for my brode landez,
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytle,
Bot synche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez."
Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes,
Knyles in the Capatoyle, and comowns assembles,
Sonereayngez and senatorus, the cete that 3emes ;
Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and other,
Alls the conquerour commaund with cruelle wordes.
"We hafe trystily trayuellede this tributte to feche,
The taxe and the trewage of fowre score wynteris,
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle thir owtt illes,
That Arthure in the Occedente occupyes att ones. 2360
He byddis 3ow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,
To brawle 3owe fore Bretayne ne his brode landes,
Ne aske hyme trebute ne taxe be nonkyns title,
Bot synche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis. 2364
We hafe foughttene in France, and vs es foule happenede,
And alleoure myche faire folke faye are by-leueede !
Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes nother,
Bott choppede downne in the chasse, synche chawnse es be-fallene !
We rede 3e store 3owe of stone, and stuffene 3our walles : 2368
3ow wakkens wandrethe and werre; be ware, 3if 3ow lykes !"

In the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene : 2371
The roy ryaHe renownde, with his Rownde Table,
One the coste of Costantyne by the clere strandez,
Has the Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer !
Whene he hade foughttene in Fraunce, and the felde wonnene,
And fersely his foomene fellde owtte of lyfe,
He bydes for the beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,
That in batelle with brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe.
He beryes at Bayone sir Bedwere the ryche ;
The cors of Kayone the kene at Came es be-leuefede,
ARThUR DESIRES THE DUCHY OF LORRAINE.

Koueride with a crystalle cleny alle ouer; 2381
His fadyre conqueride that kyth knygghtly with hondes.
Seyne in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knygghtez,
Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar the ryche,
Gud sir Cador at Came, as his kynde askes.
Thane sir Arthure onone, in the Auguste ther-afyre,
Enteres to Almayne wyth ostez arrayed; 2387
Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechene hys knygghtez,
With his lele ligge mene, as lorde in his awene.
And on Christofre daye a concelle he haldez,
Withy kynges and kayzers; clerkkes and other,
Comandez them kenely to caste alle theire wittys, 2392
How he may conquer ye byrafe the kythe that he claymes.
Bot the conquerour kene, curtays and noble,
Karpes in the concelle theys knygghtly wordez,—
"Here esa knyghte in theis kleuys, encesside with hilles,
That I haue cowayte to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,
That es Lorayne the lele, I kepe noghte to layne;
The lordchipe es lonely, as ledes me telles. 2399
I wille that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,
And seyne dresse wyth the duke, if destyny suffre:
The renke rebelle has bene vn-to my Rounde Table,
Redy aye with Romaynes, and ryotte my landes!
We salle rekken fulle rathe, if resone so happene, 2404
Who has ryghte to that rente, by ryche Gode of heuene!
Thane wille I by Lumbardye lykande to schawe,
Sett lawe in the lande, that laste sally euer;
The tyrauntez of Turkayne tempeste a littylle, 2408
Talke withi the temperalle, whilles my tyme lastez;
I gyffe my protteccione to alle the pope landez,
My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe.
It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndire Gode, 2412
Owther Peter or Paule, tha postles of Rome.
3if we spare the spiruelle, we spede bot the bettire;
Whills we haue for to speke, spille sally it nooer!"
Now they spede at the spurres, with-owttynye speche more,
To the marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghte, 2420
That es Loraryne alofed, as Londone es here;
Ceté of that seynowre, that soueraynge es holdene.
The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede, 2420
With Ferrer and Ferawnte, and other foure knyghte;
A-bowte the ceté tha seuen, they soughte at the nexte,
To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes;
Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse, 2424
Bekyrs at the bolde kyng with boustouse lates, 2429
Allblawsters at Arthure elderly schottes,
ffor to hurte hym or his horse with that hard wapene.
The kyng schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,
Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys; 2429
Lenges alle at laysere, and lokes one the wallys,
Whare they were laweste the ledes to assaille.

"Sir," said sir Ferrere, "a fiolye thowe wirkkes,
Thus naked in thy noblaye to neghe to the walles,
Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche, 2434
And schewes the with-ine, there to schende vs alle.
Hye vs hastylye heynne, or we mone fulle happene,
ffor hitt theye the or thy horse, it harms for euer!"

"Ife thow be ferde," quod the kyng, "I rede thow
ryde vttere, 2438
Lesse that theye rywe the with their rownd wapyne!
Thow arte bot a fawntkyne, no ferly me thynkkys!
Thow wille be flayede for a flye that ony thy fleschelyghttes!
I ame nothyng agaste, so me Gode helpe! 2442
Thof siche gadlynges be greude, it greues me bollyttile!
Thay wyne no wirchipe of me, bot wastys their takle!
They salle wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede!
Salle neuer harlote haue happe, thorowe helpe of my
Lorde,
To kylye a corownde kyng with krysome enoynttede!"
Thane come the herbariours, hargeous knyghte, 2448
The Hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre;
And oure forreours fers, appone fele halfes,
Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes;  
fierynde in arraye theire ryalle knygghtez, 2452

The renkez renowne of the Rownd Table.
Alle the frekke mene of Fraunce folowede thare-afyre,  
ffaire fittyde one frownte, and one the felde houys.
Than the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire horsez,  
To schewene them semly in theire scheene wedes; 2457

Buskes in batayle with baners displayede,  
With brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,  
With penouws and penselles of ylke pryce armes, 2460
AppayreHde with perrye and precious stones.
The lawnces with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,  
The lawnce with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,
The lances gleam like lightning.

Than the price mene prekes, and proues theire horsez,  
Satilles to the ceté, appone sere halfes ; 2465

Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-afyre,  
Discoueris of schotte-mene, and skyrmys a lyttile ;  
Skayres thaire skottefere, and theire skowttw-waches,  
Brittenes theire barrers with theire bryghte wapyns ;
Bett downe a barbycane, and the brygge wynys. 2470
Ne hade the garnysone bene gude at the grete 3ates,  
Thay hade wonne that wonne be theire awene strenghe !
Than with-drawesoure mene, and drisses theme bettyre,  
For dred of the drawe-brigge dasschede in sondre ;
Hyes to the harbergage, thare the kynge houys  
With his batelle one heghe, horsyde on stedys ; 2476
Than was the prynce puruayede, and theire places nommene,
Pyghte pauyllyons of paHe, and plattes in seegge.  
Than lenge they lordly, as theme leefe thoghte,  
Waches in ylke warde, as to the werre falles, 2480
Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes.
One Sonondaye be the Soone has a flethe goldene.
The kynge calles one Florente, that flour was of knygghttez,—

"The Fraunche-meñe enseblesches, ne farlyme thynkkys!
They are vn-fondyde folke in tha faire marches, 2485
GAWAYNE MEETS WITH AN ARMED KNIGHT,

and sends him to forage for cattle.

Sir Gawaine himself, the worshipful warden, shall accompany them,

and many other knights of renown.

These fresh men of arms start on their journey through woods and over hills.

They fall upon a field of grass newly mown,

where they bait their horses, while the birds sweetly sing.

Sir Gawaine goes forth by himself to seek adventures.

He sees a knight well armed,

for theme wantes the flesche and fude that theme lykes. Here are fforestez faire appone fele halues, 2487
And theyre feemene are flede with freliche bestes! Thow salle foonde to the felle, and forraye the mountes; Sir ffowrawnt and sir Florydas salle folowe thi brydylle; Vs moste withi some fresche mette refrescheoure pople, That are feedde in the fyrthe with the froyte of the erthe. Thare salle weende to this viage sir Gawayne hymselfene, Wardayne fulle wyrcipfulle, and so hym wele semes; Sir Wecharde, sir Waltyre, theis wyrcipfulle knyghtes, With alle wyseste mene of the weste marches; 2496 Sir Clegis, sir Clarybalde, sir Clarymownde the noble, The capytayne of Cardyfe, and theis wyrcipfulle knyghtes, With alle wyseste mene of the weste marches; Sir Yecharde, sir TValtyre, theis wyrcipfulle knyghtes, With alle wyseste mene of the weste marches; Sir Clegis, sir Clarybalde, sir Clarymownde the noble, The capytayne of Cardyfe, and theis wyrcipfulle knyghtes, With alle wyseste mene of the weste marches; 2500

Now ferkes to the fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes, To the felle so fewe, theis fresclyche byernes, Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and other, Holtis and hare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504
Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe; And in the myste mornynge one a mede falles, Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttylle, In swathes swepene downe, fulle of swete flourues. 2508 Thare vnbyrdilles theis blode, and baytes theire horses, To the grygyng of the daye, that byrdez² gane synge, Whylles the sur of the sonne, that sonde es of Cryste, That solaces alle synfulle, that syghte has in erthe. 2512

Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, sir Gawayne hymse selfene,

AHs he that weysse was and wyghte,³ wondyrs to seke; Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armye, Baytand one a wattire banke by the wodde eynis, 2516

Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,

Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,

With birenrce ony borne, bot a boye one,

1 MS. oo. ² MS. that byrdez that byrdes ³ MS. wyghte wyghte
Houses by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes. 2520
He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable,
With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer,
A charabocle in the chefe, chawngawnde of hewes,
And a chefe anterous, chalange who lykes. 2524
Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome with a glade wille!
A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes,
Gyrdes ewene ouere the streme one a stede ryche,
To that steryne in stouer, one strenghe thare he howys!
Egerly one Inglisce “Arthure!” he askryes, 2529
The tother irouslye answers hym sone
On a launde of Lorrayne with a lowde steuen,
That ledes myghte lystene the lenghe of a myle! 2532
“Whedyr prykkes thow, piloouer, that profers so large?
Here pykes thowre no praye, profire whene the lykes!
Bot thow in this perelle! put of the bettire,
Thow salte be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates!”
“Sir,” sais sir Gawayne, “so me Gode helpe! 2537
Siche glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttile!
Bot if thowre graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happene,
Or thowre goo of this greue, for alle thy grete wordes!”
Thane theire launces they lachen, thys lordlyche byernez,
Lagne with longe speres one lyarde stedes;
Cowpene at awntere be kraftes of armes,
Tille bothe the crowelle speres broustene att ones! 2544
Thorowe scheldys they schotte, and scherde thorowe
ma[i]les,
Bothe schere thorowre schoulders a schaft-monde large!
Thus worthylye thes wyes wondenede ere bothene;
Or they wreke themye of wrethe a-waye wille they neuer!
Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes,
Redely theis rathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550
Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys,
Hewes appone hawberkes with fulle harde wapyns!
fiulfe stowttly theystryke, thire steryne knyghttes,
Stokes at the stomake with stelyne poyntes, 2554

1 MS. pererelle.
Sir Gawaine waxes wroth, and strikes grimly with his sword Galuth.

He cleaves the knight's shield asunder, and lays open his side.

The knight strikes fiercely at Sir Gawaine.

He cuts through his armour and draws blood, which flows over all his dress.

Then the knight jeers at him, and says the blood shall never be staunched.

Sir Gawaine despises his words, and bids him tell what will stop the bleeding.

The knight will tell Gawaine if

GAWAYNE IS SORELY WOUNDED.

ffeghtene and floresche withe flawmande swerdes, Tille the flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes.

Thane sir Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide fulle sore;

With Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes!

Clefe the knyghttes schelde clencliche in sondre!

Who lukes to the lefte syde, whene his horse launches, With the lyghte of the sonne men myghte see his lyuere!

Thane granes the gone fore greefe of his woundys,

And gyrdis at sir Gawayne, as he by glentis;

And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes;

An alet enamelde he oches in sondire,

Bristes the rerebrace with the bronde ryche,

Kerues of at the coutere with the clene egge,

Ane[n]is the avawmbrace, vrayllede with siluer!

Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,

With the venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede!

That voydes so violently that alle his witte changede!

The vesere, the aventaile, his vesturis ryche,

With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer!

Thane this tyrante tite turnes the brydille,

Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, “thow arte towchede!

Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change,

ffor alle the barbours of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode stawnche!

ffor he that es blemeste with this brade brande, blyne schalle he never.”

“3a,” quod sir Gawayne, “thow greues me hot lyttile!

Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez!

Thow trowes with thy talkynge that my harte talmes!

Thow be-tydes tourfere or thowhe hyene turne,

Bot thow telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,

What may stauence this blode that thus faste rynnes.”

“3ise, I say the sothely, and sekire the my trowthe,

No surgyone in Salarne salle saue the bettyre;
With-thy that thoue suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste, To schewe shortly my schrifte, and schape for myne ende.”

“3is,” quod sir Gawayne, “so me God helpe! I gyfe the grace and graunt, thofe thoue hafe grefe servuede, With-thy thoue say me sothe what thoue here sekes, Thys sengilly and sulayne alle thi selfe one; And whate laye thoue leues one, layne noghte the sothe, And whate legyaunce, and whare thou arte lorde.”

“My name es sir Priamus; a prynce es my fadyre, Praysede in his partyes with prouede kynges; In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene; He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene their landes, Werreyand weisely wyntters and zeres, Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe, And be wyrychpfulle werre, his awene has he wonne. He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlynge of kynges, The vncle of his ayle, sir Ector of Troye; And here es the kynredene that I of come, And Judas and Isuue, thise gentille knyghtes. I am apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of other; Of Alexandere and Aufrike, and alle tha owte landes, I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede. In alle the price cetees that to the porte langes, I salle hafe trewly the tresour and the londes, And bothe trebutte and taxe whilles my tyme lastes. I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home langede, I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heune ryche; For-thy was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghttcez, To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadire; And I am for Cyrus witrye schamely suprisede, And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayede fore euere! Now hafe I taulde the the kyne that I ofe come, Wille thow for knyghthode kene me thy name?”

“But Criste,” quod sir Gawayne, “Knyghte was I neuer! With the kyulde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre Has wroghte in his warroode wynters and zeres,
PRIAMUS TELLS GAWAYNE OF THE ENEMY.

One his longe armour that hym beste lykid; 2623
I poyne alle his paveloyns that to hym selfe pendes,
Dyghttes his dowblettez for dukes and erles,
Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfene,
That he vsede in werve alle this aughte wyntter! 2627
He made me 3omane at 3ole, and gafe me gret gyftes,
And c.1 pounde, and a horse, and harnayse fulle ryche;
Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to serue,
I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe!" 2631
"Giffe his knaves be syche, his knyghttze are noble!
There es no kyng evndire Criste may kempew with hym one!
He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle the erthe lowttede,
Abillere thane euer was sir Ector of Troye. 2635
Now fore the krisome that thou kaghte that day thou
was crystenede,
Whethire thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now the
sothe."

"My name es sir Gawayne, I graunt the for sothe,
Cosyne to the conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene;
Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre, 2640
And rollede the richeste of alle the Rounde Table!
I am the dussepere and duke he dubbede with hishondes,
Devyttely on a daye be-fore his dere knyghtes;
Gruche noghte, gude sir, thofe me this grace happene;
It es the gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene!" 2645
"Petire!" sais Priamus, "now payes me bettire
Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche!
ffeore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to the harte,
Thane euer any prikkere had siche a pryse wonnyne!
Bot here es herberde at hande, in 3one huge holtes,
Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede 3if the lyke! 2651
The duke of Lorrayne the derfe, with his dere knyghtes,
The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche mene many,
The lordes of Lumbardy that leders are haldene,
The garnysone of Godarde gaylyche arrayede, 2655
The wyse of the Westnale, wirchipfulle biernez,

1 MS. 0.
Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe;
They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,
Sixty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekyre mene of
armez;

Bot jif thow hye fro this hethe, it harmes vs bothe,
And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer!
Tak heede to this hansemene, that he no horne blawe,
Are thowe heyly in haste beese hewene al to peces;
ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle,
Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe;
Be thow raghte with that rowtt, thow rydes no forther,
Ne thow bees neuer rawnsone for reches in erthe!"
Sir Gawayne wente or the wathe come, whare hym beste
lykede,
With this wortheliche wye, that wonedyd was sore;
Merkes to the mountayne there oure mene lenges,
Baytaynde theire blonkes ther on the brode mede;
Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes,
With lowde laghttirs one lofte for lykynge of byrde,
Of larkes, of lynkwhyttez, that lufflyche songene,
And some was sleghte one slepe with slaughte of the pople,
That sange in the sesone in the schenwe schawes,
So lawe in the lawnde so lykande notes.
Thane sir Whycher whas warre thaire wardayne was
wondyde,
And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes;
Sir Wychere, sir Walchere, theis weise mene of armes,
Had wondyre of sir Gawayne, and wente hyme a-gayns,
Mett hym in the mydwaye, and meraule themet[h]oghte
How he maisterede that mane, so myghtty of strenghes!
Be alle the welthe of the werlde, so woo was themne neuer!
"ffor alle our wicheipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe!"
"Greue 3ow noghte," quod Gawayne, "for Godis luffe
of heuene;
ffore this es bot gosecomere, and gyffene one erles; 2687
Thoffe my shooldire beschrede, and my schelde thyrllede,
And the wickle of myne arme werkkes a littille,
A KNIGHT DRESSES SIR PRIAMUS'S WOUNDS.

This prisoner *sir Priamus*, *that has perilous wondes*,
Sais *that he has saluez salle softene vs bothene.*

Then stirttes to his sterae sterynfulle kryghttes,
And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his brydille,
And lete his burlyche blonke baite on the flores;

Braydes of his bacenette and his ryche wedis,

Bownhes to his brode schelde and bowes to the erthe,

In alle the bodye of that bolde es no blode leuede!

Than preses to *sir Priamous precious kryghtes,*

Anysely of his horse hentes hym in armes;
His helme and his hawberke *thay takene* of aftyre,
And hastily for his hurtte alle his herte chawngyd;
They laide hym downe in the lawndez, and laghte of his wedes,

And he lenede hym one lange, or how hym beste lykede.

*That es fulle of the flour of the four welle,*
That flowes owte of Paradise whene the flode ryses,

That myche froyt of fallez, *that feede schalle vs alle*;
Be it frette on his flesche, *thare synnes* are entamede,
The freke schalle be fische halle with-in fowre howres.

They vncouere *that cors with full clene hondes*;
With clere watire a kryghte clensis theire wondes,
Keled theyme kyndly, and comforthed *ther hertes*.
And whene the carffes ware clene, *thay clede them a3ayne*;
Barelleferrers they brochede, and broghtetheme the wyne,
Bothe brede and brawne, and bredis fulle ryche;

Whene *thay hade etene anone* they armede after.

Thane tha awntrende men "*as armes!*" askryes,
With a claryouze clere, thire kryghtez to-gedyre,

Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys:—

"3ondyr es a companye of clene mene of armes,*
The keneste in kontek *that vndir Criste lenges*;
In 3one okene wode an oste are arrayede,*
Vndir-takande mene of thiese owte londes;"
As sais vs *sir Priamous*, so helpe seynt Peter!"

"Go, mene," quod Gawayne, "and grape in youre hertez,
Sir Florent and his men enter the forest.

Who sall graythe to one grewe to one gret lordes;
3if we gettesse goo home, the kyng wille be greuede,
And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttile. 2728
We are with sir Florente, as to-dye falles,
That es floure of fraynce, for he fleede neuer;
He was chosene and charge gid in chambrire of the kyng,
Chiftayne of this journee with cheualrye noble; 2732
Whethere he fyghte or he flee, we sall folowe aftyre;
sore alle the fere of one folke forsake sall I neuer!"

"ffadyre," sais sir Florent, "fulle faire 3e it telle!
Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes;
3if any foly be-falle, the fawte sall be owrs,
And fremedly o Fraunce be flemede for euere! 2738
Woundes noghte 3our wirchip, my witte es bot symple;
3e are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as 3owe lykes;
3e are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve hundrethe,
And that es fully to fewe to feghte withi theme alle,
sore harlottiez and hansemene sall helpe bott littille;
They wille hye theyme hyene for alle theire gret wordes!
I rede 3e wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,
And warpes wyliy a-waye, as wirchipfulle knyghtez."
"I grawnte," quod sir Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe!
Bot here are galyarde gomes that of the gre servis,
The kreuelleste knyghtez of the kynges chambyre,
That kane carpe with the coppe knyghtly wordes;
We sall preue to-daye who sall the prys wyne." 2751

Nowe feriours fers vn-to the fyrthe rydez,
And fonngez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttzez;
Prekes aftyre the pray, as prycye mene of armes.
Florett and Floridas, with fyve score knyghttzez, 2755
ffollowede in the foreste, and on the way fowndys,
fflyngande a faste trott, and on the folke dryffes.
Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth
Of freke mene to the fyrthe, appone fresche horses;
One sir Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede, 2760
Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,
Morte Arthure.
He calls scornfully on Sir Florent,
who with his lance in rest pierces him through the brain.

His cousin vows vengeance for his death,
but Sir Floridas quickly disposes of him.

Sir Raynald, the renegade, proudly presses in;
but Sir Richer, of the Round Table, runs him through with a spear.

The rest of the five hundred

He flenges to sir Florent, and pristly he kryes,—
"Why flees thow, falls knyghte? thesende hafe thi saule!"

Thane sir Floridas was fayne, and infewer castys;
One Fawnelle of ffryselande to efferaunt he rydys, 2765
And raghte in the reyne on the stede ryche,
And rydes to-warde the rowte, restes he no lengere!
ffulle butt in the frount he flysches hym euene, 2768
And alle dysfegours his face with his felle wapene!
Thurghhe his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,
And brustene his neke-bone, that alle his breste stoppede!

Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede fulle lowde,
"Thowe has killed ecolde dede the kynge of alle knyghttes!
He has bene fraistede on felde in fyftene rewnies;
Thow schalle dye for his dede with my derfe wapene,
And alle the doughtty for dule that in 3one dale houes!"
"fly," sais sir Floridas, "thow fleryande wryche!
Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthede schrewe!"
Bot floridas with a swerde, as he by glenttys, 2780
Alle the flesche of the flanke he flappes in sondyre,
That alle the filthe of the freke and fele of the guttes
flooes his folc fotte, whene he furthe rydes!

Than rydes a renke to reschewe that byerne,
That was Raynalde of the Rodes, and rebelle to Criste,
Peruertede with paynyms that Cristene persewes;
Presses in prowldly, as the praye wendes, 2787
ffor-thi in presence thare he profes so large!
Bot thane a renke, sir Richere of the Rounde Table,
One a ryalle stede rydes hym ajaynes;
Thorowe a rownnde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,
That the rosselde spere to his herte ryynes!
The renke relys a-bowte and rusches to the erthe,
Roris fulle ruydlye, bot rade he no more!
Now alle that es fere and vnfaye of thes fyve hundreth
PRIAMUS ASKS LEAVE TO JOIN IN THE FIGHT. 83

falles on sir filorent, a flyve score knygghettes,
Be-twix a plasche and a fode, appone a flate lawnde;
Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme agaynes.

Than was lowde appone loft “Lorrayne!” askryede,
Whene ledys with longe speris lasschenoe to-gedyrs,
And “Arthure!” oneouesye, whenetheymeoghteaylede.

Than sir filorent and Floridas in fewtyre they caste,
ffruschenoe one alle the ffrape, and biernes affrayede;
ffHis fyve at the frounte theare they fyrst enteride,
And, or they ferke forthire, fele of these othere!

Brenyes-browddene they briste, britteneede scheldes,
Bettes and beres downe the best that theme byddes;
Alle that rewylyde in the rowtte they rydene awaye,
So rewldy they rere theys ryalle knyghttes!

When sir Priamous, that prince, persayuende theire gamene,
He hade pete in herte that he ne durste profire;
He wente to sir Gawayne, and sais hym these wordes,—
“Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre,
They are with Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo thane seuene hundreth
Of the Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes;
Walde thow suffire me, sir, for sake of thi Criste,
With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones.”

“I grouche noghte,” quod Gawayne, “the gree es thaire awene!
They mone hafe gwerddouns fulle grett graunt of my lorde,
Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene!
ffrekes faughte noghte theire fille this fyftene wynter!
I wille noghte stire with my stale halfe a stede lenghe,
Bot they be stedde with more stuffe thane one zone stede houys.”

Than sir Gawayne was warre, with-owttynye the wode hemmes,
men of Westphalia,
headed by the Earl Antele, who leads 8000 knights.

The Earl is indignant that Arthur’s knights should venture to resist so great a host.

They had better retreat while they are able.

Sir Alger, his brother, says that though they are so few they are a match for an army.

Sir Gawaine encourages his knights.

Wyes of the Westfale appone wyght horsez, 2827
Walopande wodely, as the waye forthes, With alle the wapyns i-wys that to the werre longez.
The erle Antele the olde avawmwarde he buskes, Ayeande one ayther hande heghte thosande knyghtez; His pelours and pausyrs passede alle nombyre, 2831
That ever any prynce lede puruyade in erthe!

Than the duke of Lorrayne dressesse thare-aftyre,
With dowbille of the Duche-mene, that doughty were holdene;

Payynmes of Pruyslande, prekkers fulle noble, 2835
Come prekkande be-fore with Priamous knyghttez.

Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his brother,—“Me angeres ernestly at Arthurues knyghtez!
Thus enkerly one an oste awnters theme selfene; 2839
They wille be owttrayede anone, are vndrone rynge, Thus folily one a felde to fyghte with vs alle!
Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes! 2842
Walde they purposse take, and passe one their ways, Prike home to theire prynce, and theire pray leue,
They myghtelenghe theire lyefe, and lossene bollitlle!
It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde!”

“Sir,” sais sir Algere, “thay hafe lítillle vsede 2847
To be owttrayede withe oste: me angeres the more!
The fayreste schalle be fullèfeye, that in ourefloke ryddlez, Als fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue!”

Than gud Gawayne, gracious and noble, 2851
Alle with glorious gle he gladdis his knyghtez;
“Gloppyns noghte, gud mene, for gleterand scheldes,
3ofe 3one gadlyngez be gaye one 3one gret horses!
Banerettez of Bretayne, buskes vp 3our hertes! 2855
Beesnoghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne ofhaire bryghte wedis!
We salle blenke theire boste for alle theire bolde profire,
Als bouxome as birde es in bede to hir lorde!
3effe we feghte to-daye, the felde schalle be owrs, 2859
The fekille fayle salle faile, and falssede be distroyede!
A NOBLE JOU sting T akes place.

One folk is one ffo unt er e, vnfraistede theyme semes;
Thay make faythie and faye to the fend seluene!
We salle in this viage victoures be holdene,
And avaun te de with voycez of valyant biernez;
Praysede with pryncez in presence of lordes,
And luffede with ladies in dyu er se londes!
Aughte neuer siche honoure none of oure elders,
Vnwyne ne Absolone, ne none of thies other!

Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,
That es oure maisters seyne, that he myche traistez;
Melys of that mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle;
Who so meles of that mayde, myskaries he neuer!

Be these wordes ware saide, they ware noghte ferre be-hynde
Bot the lenghe of a launde, and "Lorayne!" askryes.
Was neuer siche a justynge at journé in erthe,
In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,
Whene Iulyus and Iosta lle ware juggede to dy,
As was whene the ryche mene of the Rowndle Table

Ruschede in-to the rowte one ryalle stedes!
Sor so raythely thay rusche with roselde speris,
That the raskaille was rade, and rane to the grefes,
And karede to that courte as cowardes for ever!

"Peter!" sais sir Gawayne, "this gladdez myne herte!
That 3one gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbr e;
I hope that thees harlottez salle harme vs bot littille,
Flore they wille hyde theme in haste with-in 3one holte

Thay are fewere one sfield than thay were fyrste nombird e,
Befourty thousande in faythe, foralle theyrefaire hostes."
Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,
"A huge giant is slain by a justice of Wales.
Has jonede one sir Ierante, a justis of Walis;
Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorow e,
And a fyne gessera wnte of gentille mayles,

Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre!
One a jambe stede this jurnee he makes;

1 neune struck out, and mene written instead.
Thus es the geante for-juste, that errawnte Iewe, 2895
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym the more!

Than the genatours of Genue enjoynes att ones,
And frykis one the frowntere welle a fyve hundreth i;
A freke bighte sir fiederike, with fulle fele other, 2899
fierkes one a frusche, and fresclyche askryes
To fyghte with oure sfororreurs, that one felde houis.
And thane the ryalle renkkes of the Rownde Table
Rade furthi fulle ernestly, and rydis theme agaynes,
Mellis with the medille-warde, bot they ware illemachede;
Of siche a grett multytude was meruayle to here.

Seyne at the assemblé the Sarazenes discoueres
The soueraynge of Sessoyne, that saluede was neuer;
Gyawntis for-justede with gentille kynghtes, 2908
Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to the herte!
They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,
That the hiltede swerdes to thaire hertes rynnys!
Than the renkes renownde of the Rownd Table
Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayede wrecches;
And thus they dreuene to the deede dukes and erles,
Alle the dreghe of the daye, withi dredfuller werkes!

Than sir Priamous the prynce, in presens of lordes,
Presez to his penowne, and pertly it hentes,
Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys
To the ryalle rowte of the Rownde Table;
And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,
flor they his resone had rede on his schelde ryche.
Owte of the scheltrone they schede, as schepe of a fold,
And steris furthi to the stowre, and stode be theire lorde!
Seyne they sent to the duke, and saide hym thise wordes,—
“We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex 3ere and more;
We for-sake the to-daye be serte of owre lorde;
We sewe to oure soueraynge in sere kynges londes.
Vs defawtes oure feez of this foure wyntteres;
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes;
Oure wages are werede owte, and thi werre endide,
We maye with oure wirchippe weend whethire vs lykes!
I red thowe trette of a trewe, and trofle no lengere,
Or thow salle tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene."
"fyy a doles!" saide the duke, "the deuell haue your bones!
The dawngere of on doggez drede schalle I neuer!
We salle dele this daye, be dedes of armes,
My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes!
That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde!" 2939
The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,
Thay chases Arthurs knyghtez on a dromedary.
Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuous are holdene. 2943
Thas fresche horsesede mene to the frownt rydes,
His men fell many of the forayers.
They hade foughtene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe;
Sir Gawaine grasps his speare.
It was no ferly, in faythe, thofe they faynt waxene.
They had agayne with galyarde knyghtez; 2949
As man of this medille-erthe, that moste hade greuede.
Metes the maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,
Child Chastelaine slays Sir Cheldrik,
As man of this medille-erthe, that moste hade greuede.
Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of the kynges chambyre,
Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of the kynges chambyre,
Was warde to sir Wawayne of the weste marches,
Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of the kynges chambyre,
Cheses to sir Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,
Bot on Swyane of Swecy, with a swerde egge,
With a chasyng sperhe he chockes hym thurghe!
Bot on Swyane of Swecy, with a swerde egge,
This chekke hymne eschewed be chauncez of armes;
And is slain by Swyan.
So thay chase that childe, eschape may he neuer!
So thay chase that childe, eschape may he neuer!
Bot thay chase that childe, eschape may he neuer!
The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre! 2959
This chekke hymne eschewed be chauncez of armes;
He swounande diede, and on the swarthe lengede,
and is slain by Swyan.
Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more!
That the chyldand watire one his cheke rynnyde!
Than sir Gawayne gretes with his gray eghe;
"Woo es me," quod Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hade;
ARTHUR'S KNIGHTS ARE VICTORIOUS.

I sall wage for that wye alle that I welde, 2967
Bot I be wrokon on that wye, that thus has hym wondye!"

He dresses hym drerily, and to the duke rydes,
Bot one sir Dolphyne the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,
And sir Gawayne hym gyrd with a grym launce, 2971
That the groundene spere glade to his herte!

And egerly he hente owte, and hurte a-nother,
An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes;
Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hym thorowe, 2975
That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes!

Thare es slayne in that slope, be elagere of his homes,
Sixty slongene in a slade of sleghye men of armes!

Thofe sir Gawayne ware wo, he wayttes hym by,
And was warre of that wye that the childe wonkyde,
And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,
That he swyftly swelte, and on the erthe swounes!

And thane heraykesto the rowte, and ruysches one helmys;
Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes; 2984
Rydes one a rawndoune, and his rayke holdes;
Thorow-owte the rerewarde he holdes wayes,
And thare raughte in the reyne this ryalle the riche,
And rydez in-to the rowte of the Rownde Table.

Than eoure cheualrous men changene their horsez,
Chases and choppes downe cheftaynes noble,
Hittes fulle hertely on helmes and scheldes, 2991
Hurtes and hewes downe haythene knyghtez!

Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to the scholdirs!

Was neuer siche a clamour of capitynes in erthe!
Thare was kynges sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,
And knyghtes of the contre, that knawene was ryche;

Lordes of Lorayne and Lumbardy bothene 2997
Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure lele knyghttez;
Thas that chasede that daye, theire chaunce was bettire,
Swiche a cheke at a chace escheuede thyme neuer!

Then sir florent, be fyghte, had the felde wonene,
He fierkes ine be-fore with fyve score knyghttez;

1 MS. cheualrous.
Theire prayes and theire presonereres passes one aftyre, With pylours, and pauysers, and pryse mene of armes.

Thane gudly sir Gawayne gydes his knyghtez, Gas in at the gayneste, as gydes hym telles, fiore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes

Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche. fiore-thy they stode at the straytez, and with his stale houede,

Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis; Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede;

Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene. An hawrawde hyes be-fore, the beste of the lordes,

Hom at the herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes;

Tornys tytte to the tente, and to the kyng telles Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spede;—

"Alle thy forreours are fore, that forrayede with-owttyne,
Sir fflorant, and sir ffloridas, and alle thy ferse knyghtez;
Thay hafe forrayede and fogyshene with fulle gret nowm-

byre,

And fele of thy foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe! Oure wirchipfulle wardayne es were escheuyde,

ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipie for euere,
He has Dolfyne slayne, and the duke takyne!

Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his kondes!
He has presoners price, prynez and erles,
Of the richeste blode that regnys in erthe!

Alle thy cheuallrous mene faire are eschewede,

Bot a childe Chasteleynue myschance es be-fallene."

"Hawtayne," sais the kyng, "harawde, be Criste!
Thow has helyd myne herte, I hethe the for-sothe!
I zife the in Hamptone a hundreth pownde large." T

The kyng than to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,

With somercastelle and sowe appone sere halfes;

Skyftis his skotiferis, and skayles the wallis,
And iche wache has his warde with wiese mene of armes.

1 Or wathe.
The city is surrendered.

Than[e boldly] thay buske, and bendes engynes,
Payse[n in pylotes] and proues theire castes;
Mynsteris and mason dewes they malle to the erthe,
Chirches and chapelles chalke-whitte blawnchede. 3039
Stone [s]tepelles fulle styffe in the strete ligges,
Chawmbyrs with chymnes, and many cheefe inns,
Payse[n and pelid downe] playsterede walles;
The pyne of the pople was peté for to here! 3043
Than[e the duches hire dyghte with damesels ryche,
The cowntas of Crasyne with hir clere maydlys,
Knels downe in the kyrnelles thare the kyng honede,
On a couerede horse comlyli arayede; 3047
They knewe hym by contentamce, and cryede fulle loode,—
"Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to these wordes!
We be-seke 30w, sir, as soueraynge and lorde,
That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oure Criste! 3051
Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,
Or the ceté be sodaynly with assawte wonnene!"
He weres his vesere with a vowt noble;
With vesage vextouuns, this valynte bierne 3055
Meles to hir myldly with fulle meke wordes,—
"Salle no mysse do 30w, ma dame, that to me lenges;
I gyf 30w chartire of pes, and 3oure cheefe maydens,
The childire and the chastemene, the cheualrous knyghtez;
The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littylle! 3060
He salle idene the fulle wele, dout 3ow noghte eHes."
Thane sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordez,
flor to leue the assawte, the ceté was 3oldene; 3063
With the erle eldeste sone he sent hym the kayes,
And seside the same nyythe, be sent of the lordez.
The duke to Douere es dyghete, and alle his dere knyghtez,
To duelle in dawngere and dole the dayes of hys lyue.
Thare fleede, at the ferrere zate, folke withouttynue
nombye,
flor ferde of sir florent and his fers knyghtez;
Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,
With vetaile, and vesselle, and vestoure so ryche. 3071
Thay buske vpe a banere abowne the brode zates.
Of sir florent, in fly so fayne was he neuer!
The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to the wallys,
And saide, "I see be zone syngne the ceté es owres!"
Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayede,
Euene at the vndrone etles to lenge.
In iche leuere on lowde the kyng did crye,
Of payne of lyf and lym and lesynge of londes,
That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede,
Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,
Ne be no burgesse wyffye, better ne werse;
Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to the burghe longede.

Whene the kyng Arthure hade lely conquerid,

And the castelle couerede of the kythe riche,
Alle the crowelle and kene, be craftes of armes,
Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde.
He deuysede and delte to dyuerse lordez,
A dowere for the duchez and hir dere childire;
Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle the londez,
That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his weise knyghtez.

Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,
Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefe t[h]oghte;
And one the Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez,
Lengez thare at laysere with lykyngge i-nowe;
Thare his galays ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,
Alle gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,
With cabanes couerede for kynges a-noyntede,
With clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and other;
Sone stowede theirse stuffe, and stablede theirse horses,
Strekes streke ouer the streem in-to the strayte londez.
Now he mounes his myghte with myrthes of herte,
Oure mowntes so hye, thase meruailous wayes;
Gosse in by Goddarde, the garett he wynmys,
Graythes the garnisone grisely wondes!
Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys
With his hole bataylle, be-haldande a-bowte,
THE LORD OF MILAN MAKES SUBMISSION.

Lukande one Lumbarddye, and one lowde melys,—
"In 3one lykande londe, lorde be I thynke."
Thane they cayre to Combe, with kynges a-noyntede,
That was kyde of the coste, kay of alle other. 3111
Sir filorent and sir floridas than fowndes be-fore,
With fireke mene of friaunce welle a fyve hundreti;
To the ceté vn-sene thay soghte at the gayneste,
And sett an enbuschement, als theme selfe lykys. 3115
Thane ischewis owt of that ceté, fulle sone be the morne,
Slale discouverours, skyftes theire horses;
Than skyftes thes skouerours, and skippes one hyllis,
Diskouerers for skulkers that they no skathe lymppene;
Ponervalle and pastorelles passede one aftyre, 3120
With porkes to pasture at the price 3ates;
Boyes in the subarbis bourdene fulle heghe,
At a bare synglere that to the bente rynnys.
Thane brekes oure buschemeit, and the brigge wynnes,
Brayedez in-to the burghe with baners displayede, 3125
Stekes and stabbis1 thorowe that them a-jayne-stonides;
ffowre streitis, or thay stynte, they stroyene fore enere!
Now es the conquour in Combe, and his courte holds
With-in the kyde castelle, with kynges enoynette;
Reconsaillez 2 the comouns that to the kythi lengez,
Comfourthes the carefulle withi knyghtly wordez; 3131
Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene;
Bot alle the contré and he fulle sone ware accordide.

The syre of Melane herde saye the ceté was wonnene,
And send to Arthure sertayne lordes, 3135
Grete sommes of golde, sexti horse chargegid,
Be-soghty hymse as souerayne to socoure the pople,
And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for ener,
And make hymse servuce and suytte for his sere londes;
ffor plesaunce of Pawnee, and of Pownte Tremble, 3140
ffor Pyse, and for Pavy, he profers fulle large,
Bothe purpur, and palle, and precios stonyse,
Palfayes for any prynce, and prouede stedes; 3143

1 MS. stablis. 2 Or Beconsaillez.
And ilke a 3ere for Melane a melionel of golde,
Mekely at Martynmesse to menske with his hordes;
And euer withowtttyne askynge he and his ayers
Be homagers to Arthur, whilnes his lyffe lastis. 3147 He pays homage to Arthur at Como.
The kynge be his concelle a condethe hym sendis,
And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde.
In-to Tuskane he tournez, whene thus wele tymede,
Takes townnes fulle tyte with towrres fulle hegovhe; Arthur enters Tuscany,
Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152 and ravages the country.
Towrres he turnez, and turmentez the pople,
Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,
Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngene theire handis; 3155
Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandrethe he wroghte!
Thus they spryngene and sprede, and sparis bot lyttile,
Spoylles dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes; 3159
Spendis vn-sparely, that sparede was lange,
Spedis theme to Spolett with speris inewe!
Siro Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hymne sprynges,
And spekynngs of his spencis, dissipite es fulle hugge!
Toward Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes;
Avisely in that vale he vetailles his biernez,
With vernage, and other wyne, and venysone bakene;
And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge. 3167
Vertely the avawmwarde voydez theire horsez,
In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez;
Thare suggeournes this souerayne, withi solace in herte,
To see whene the senatours sent any wordes; 3171
Reuelle with riche wyne, riotes hym selfene,
This roy with his ryalle mene of the Rownde Table,
Withi myrthys, and melodye, and manykyne gamynes;
Was neuer meriere men made one this erthe! 3175
Bot one a Seterdaye at none, a senenyghte thare-aytyme,
The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede
Knelis to the conquerour, and karpes thire wordes,
Prayes hym for the pes, and profyrs fulle large, To hafe peté of the pope, that put was at-vndere; Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Lorde, Bot a seuyenyghte daye to thay ware alle sembede, And they schulde sckerlye hym see the Sonondaye ther-aftyre, In the ceté of Rome, as soueraynge and lorde; And crowne hym kyndly with krysomede hondes, With his ceptre, as soueraynge and lorde. Of this vndyrtakyenge ostage are comyne, Of ayers fulle auenaunt awughte score childreime, In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde, And be-tuke theme the kynge, and his clerę knyghttes. When they had tretide thiere trewe, with trowmpynge ther-after They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables whare raysede; The kynge hymse fene es sette, and certayne lordes, Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez, Alle the senatours are sette sere be thame one, Serfed solemnly with selcoute the metes: The kynge myghtty of myrthe, with his mylde wordes, Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table, Comforthes the cardynalle so knyghtly 1 hymne seluene; And this roye ryalle, as romawns vs tellis, Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table. The tawghte mene and the conynge, whene theme tyme thoghte, Tas theire lefe at the kynge, and torne de agayne; To the ceté that nyghte thaye soughte at the gayneste, And thus the ostage of Rome with Arthure es leneđe. Than this roy royalle reherys theis wordes,— "Now may we reuelle and riste, fore Rome es oure awene! Make oure ostage at ese, thise auenaunt 2 childyrene, And luk 3e hondene theme alle that in myne oste lengez, The emperour of Almayne, and alle theis este marches;
We salle be ouerlynge of alle that one the erthe lengez! We wil by the Crosse dayes encroche theis londez, And at the Cristynmesse daye be crowned ther-aftyre; Ryngne in my ryalltes, and holde my Rownde Table, Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes; 3215
Syne graythe ouer the grete see with gud mene of armes, To renenge the renke that one the rode dyede!"
Thane this comlyche kynge, as cronycles tellys,
Bownys brathely to bede with a blythe herte:
He goes to bed and dreams.
Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdille,
And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis.
Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede;
He mett in the morn-while fulle meruaylous dremes!
And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to the ende, The kynge dares for dowte, dye as he scholde; 3225
He sends for his philosophers, and his affraye telles,—
"Sene I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer! for-thy rawnsakes redyly, and rede me my sweffenny, And I salle redily and ryghte rehersene the sothe.
Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one, That I ne wiste no waye whedire that I scholde, 3231
Thurghat foreste I flede, thare florues whare heghe,
Thr for fele me for ferde of tha foule thyngez;
Merkede to a medowe with montaynges enclosyde,
The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde!
The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,
Withi clauer and clereworte cleda euene ouer; 3235
Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde theire tuskes,
Alle fore laynge of blude of my lele knygthez! 3235
Thurghat foreste I flede, thare florues whare heghe,
flor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thyngez;
Merkede to a medowe with montaynges enclosyde,
The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde!
The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,
Withi clauer and clereworte cleda euene ouer;
The vale was enuerownde with vynes of siluer,
Alle with grapis of golde, gretter ware neuer, 3243
Enhorilde withi arborye and alkyns trees,
Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez there-vndyre;

1 MS. Encroche encroche.
2 MS. crownend.
3 MS. euene rownde.
A beautiful duchess descended from the clouds, dressed in gorgeous apparel. She whirled a strange wheel with her hands.

Thereon was a chair of silver, ornamented with carbuncles. Kings clave to the wheel one after another. Six had fallen from the settle, and lamented their misfortune.

The first was a little man with lean loins and long hair. The laste was a litylle mane that laide was be-nethe, His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche to schewe, 3279

Alle froytez foddenid was that floreschede in erthe, fiaire frithed in frawnke appone tha free bowes; 3247 Whas thare no downkynge of dewe that oghte dere scholde, With the drowghte of the daye alle drye ware the flores!

Than discendis in the dale, downe fra the clowddez, A duches dereworthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis, 3251 In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely hewed, Alle with loytour over-laide lowe to the hemmes, And with ladily lappes the lengthe of a 3erde, And alle redily reuersside with rebanes of golde, 3255 Bruchez and besauntez, and other bryghte stonys, With hir bake and hir breste was brochede alle ouer, With kelle and with corenalle cilenliche arrayede, And that so comly of colour one knowene was neuer!

A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hir whitte hondez, Ouer-whelme alle quayntely the whele as cho scholde; The rowelle whas rede golde with ryalle stonys, Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe;

The spekes was splentide alle with speltis of siluer, The space of a spere lenghe springande fulle faire; There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer, And chekyrde with charebocle chawngyngge of hewe; Appone the compas ther clewide kygis one rawe, With corownes of cler Golde that krakede in sondire:

Sex was of that setille fulle sodaynliche fallene, 3270 Ilke a segge by hyme selfe, and saide theis wordez,—

‘That euer I rengnede one thir rog, me rewes it euer! Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in erthe!

Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte elles, Bot renaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone the pople! 3275 And thus I drife forthe my dayes, whilles I dreghe myghte, And there-fore derflyche I am dampnede for euere!’
The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a 3erde,
His lire and his lyghame lamede fulle sore;
The two eyne of the byeryne was brighttere thane siluer,
The tother was zalowere thene the 3olke of a naye.

'I was lorde,' quod the lede, 'of londes i-newe, 3284
And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in erthe;
And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,
Bot lightly now ame I loste, leue iche mane the sothe!'

The secunde sir for-sothe thai sewede theme aftyre,
The second had sat on the seat as sovereign and lord.
The fayreste of fegure that fourmede was cuer!
'I was frekke in my faihe,' he said, 'whilles I one
fowlde regnede,
The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,
The fourth was a fair man, but foul nischance had
nowe happened to him.
ffamows in sferre londis, and floure of alle kynges; 3303
Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,
ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-luyde!'

The fyfte was a faire mane thane fele of thies other,
The fifth was very fierce and violent.
A fforsey mane and a ferse, with fomand lippis; 3307
He fongede faste one the feleyghes, and fayled his armes,
Then he failede and felle a fyfty fote large;
Bot 3it he sprange and sprente, and spraddene his armes,
And one the spere-lenghe spekes, he spkes thire wordes—
'I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312
As souerayne and seyngnour of sere kynges londis;
He had been sovereign in Syria, but was now fallen.
Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,
And for sake of my syne, zone sete es me rewede!

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire,
A harpe and a hande-slynge with harde flynte stones;
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes
One of the doughtyeste that duelled in erthe;
Bot I was merride one molde in my moste strenghethis,
With this maydene so mylde, that mofes vs alle.'

Two kynge were clymbande, and clauercande one
heghe,
The creste of the compas they couette fulle zerne;
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange
here-afyte,
As two of the cheffeste choses in erthe!'
The childire ware chalkle-whitte, chekys and other,
Bot the chayere a-bownne chenede they neuere:
The forthirmaste was freely, with a fronct large,
The faireste of fyssnamy that fourmede was euer;
And he was buskeded in a blew of a blewe noble,
With flowerdelice of golde floreschede al euer;
The tother was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,
With a comliche crosse cornene of golde,
flowre crossetettes krafty by the crosse ristes,
And ther-by knewe I the kyng, that crystnede hym
semyde.

Thane I went to that wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis! wele arte thow
fowndene;
The aughte to wirchipe my wille, and thow wele cowthye,
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in erthe;
flore alle thy wirchipe in werre by me has thow wonnene,
I hafe bene frendely, freke, and fremmede tille other;
That has thow fowndene in faieth, and fele of thi biernez,
flore I felled downe sir Frolle with frowarde knyghtes;
flore-thi the fruytes of Fraunce are freely thynne awene.
Thow salle the chayere escheue, I chese the my selfene, He was chosen to achieve the chair,
Be-fore alle the cheftaynes chosene in this erthe.' 3348
And sette me softlye in the see, the septre me rechede ;
Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351
That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte;
Dressid one me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire,
And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonys,
Enamelde with azoure, the erth there-one depayntide,
Selkylde with the salte see appone sere halfes,
In sygne that I sothely was sourayne in erthe.

Than broorht cho me a brande with fnlle bryghte hiltes,
And bade me brawndysche the blade, 'the brande es
myne awene :
Many swayne with the swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede ;
for whilles thow swanke with theswerde, it swykkede
the neuer.'

Than raykes cho with roo, and riste whene hir likede,
To the ryndes of the wode, richere was neuer ;
Was no pomarie so pighte of pryncez in erthe,
Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot paradys one.
Scho bad the bewes scholde bewe downe, and bryng to
my hondes
Of the beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe ;
Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at ōnes,
The hegheste of iche a hirste, I hette 30w for-sothe :
Scho bade me fyrthe noghte the fruyte, bot fondé whilles
me likede,
'flonde of the fyneste, thow freliche byerne,
And reche to the ripeste, and ryotte thy seluene !
Riste, thow ryaHe roye, for Rome es thyne awene !
And I sallé redily rolle the roo at the gayneste,
And reche the the riche wyne in rynsede coupes.' 3375
Thane cho wente to the welle by the wode enis,
That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnes ;
Kaughte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire ; 3378
Scho bad me deverliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene.

The lady drew
wine for him
from the spring,
and bade him
drink to her.

AND SETS HIM IN THE SEAT.
EXPLANATION OF THE DREAM.

And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owre,
With alle likynge and luffe, that any lede scholde;
Bot at the myddelaye fulle ewyne alle hir mode chaunged,
And mad myche manace with meruayllous wordez;
Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe hir browes:
‘Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste that me made!
ffor thow salle lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,
Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe!’

Abowte scho whirls the whole, and whirls me vndire,
Tille alle my quarters that whille whare qwaste al to peces!

And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire!
And I hafe cheueride for chele, sen me this chance happenedec.

Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle wery for-dreymyde,
And now wate thow my woo, worde as the lykes.”

“ffreke,” sais the philosophre, “thy fortune es passede!
ffor thow salle fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykes!
Thow arte at the hegheste, I hette the for-sothe! 3396
Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more!
Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyed,
Sakeles, in cirquytrie, in sere kynges landis;

Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende!
Thow has a schewynge, sir kynge, take kepe 3if the lyke,
ffor thow salle fersely falle with-in fyve wynters! 3402
ffownde abbayes in ffraync, the froytez are theyn awene,
ffore ffroille, and for ffraawnt, and for thir ferse knyghttis,
That thowe fremyddly in ffraync has faye be-leuede;
Take kepe 3itte of other kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,
That were conquerours kydde, and coronned in erthe;
The eldeste was Alexandere, that alle the erthe lowteted;
The other Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume;
The thirde Iulyus Cesare, that geant was holdene,
In iche jorne jentille, a-juggede with lordes;

The ferthe was sir Judas, a justere fulle nobile,
The maysterfull Makabee, the myghtyeste of strenghes;
The fyfte was Iosue, that joly mane of armes, 3414 the fifth Joshua, 
That in Jerusalemoste fulle myche joye lymppeede;
The sexte was Dauid the dere, demyd with kynges One of the doughtyeste that dubbede was ever, ffor he slewe with a slynge, be slyghte of his handis, Golyas the grette gome, grymeeste in erthe; 3419 
Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes, That in the sawtire ere sette with selcounthe wordes. 

The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe, Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng Some of Fraunce; He dalle be crowelle and kene, and conquerower holdene, Couere be conqueste contres ynewe; 3425 He dalle encroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene, And that lifeliche launce, that lepe to his herte, When he was cruysfiede one crose, and alle the kene naylis,

Knyghtly he dalle conquere to Cristyne men hondes. The tother dalle be Godfraye, that Gode schalle reuenge One the Gud Frydaye with galarde knyghtes; 3431 He dalle of Lorrayne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire, And synne in Jerusalem myche joye happyne, ffor he dalle couer the crosse be craftes of armes, 3434 And synne be corownde kyngye, with krysmeynoynttede; Salle no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyne, Ne siche myschefe dreghe, whene trewthe dalle be tryede! fфор-thy ffortune the fetches to fulli the nowmbye, 3439 Ahs nyane of the nobileste namede in erthe; 
This salle in romance be redd with ryalle knyghttes, Rekkenede and renownnde with ryotous kynges, And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442 ffor the doughtyeste that euere was duelland in erthe: So many clerkis and kynges salle karpe of 3oure dedis, And kepe 3oure conquistez in cronycle for euere!

Bot the wolfes in the wode, and the whilde bestes, Are some wikkyd mene that werrayes thy rewmes, 3447 Es entirde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,
He will have some tidings within ten days.

He is bid to repent and amend.

The king rises and puts on his robes.

He sees a man approaching in the garb of a pilgrim.

He asks him whither he is going,

And alyenys and ostes of vncouthe landis.

Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes, 3450
That some torfere es tydde, sene thow fro home turnede;
I rede thow rekyne and reherse vn-resonable dedis,
Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes!
Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,
And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule!" 3455

Than ryeze the richekyng, and rawghte one his wedys,
A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,
A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille;
And one he henttis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,
A pauys pillione hatt, that pighte was fulle faire
With perry of the Oryent, and precyous stones;
His glones gayliche gilte, and grauene by the hemmys,
With graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe;
His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no byerne elles;
And bownnes ouer a brode mede, with bretti at his herte;
ffurth he stalkis a styte by tha stille enys,
Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hymone;
Att the surs of the sonne, he sees there commande,
Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes,
A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmmme clothes,
With hatte, and with heyghe schone homely and rownde;
With flute ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle ouer,
Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hyanges,
With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,
Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde.
The gome graythely hym grette, and bade gode morwene;
The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,
Of Latyne corroumpede alle, fulle louely hym menys,—
"Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne?
Qwhyllses this werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde;
Here es ane enmye with oste, vndire 3one vynes;
And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes;
Bot 3if thow hafe condethe of the kynges selfene," 3483
HE DISCLOSES HIMSELF AS SIR CRADOK.

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thow haues; And if thou halde the hey waye, they hente the also, Bot if thow hastily hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes."

Thane karpes sir Cradoke to the kynge selfene, 3487
"I salle for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe! Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes!
Latte the keneste come, that to the kynge langes,
I salle encountire hyme as knyghte, so Criste hafe my sawle!

ffor thow may noghte reche me, ne areste thy selfene,
Thoffe thou be richely arayede in fulle riche wedys;
I will noghte wonde for no werre, to wende whare me likes,

Ne for no wy of this werlde, that wroghte es one erthe!
Bot I wil passe in pilgremage this pas vn-to Rome,
To purchese me pardonne of the pape selfene;
And of paynes of purgatorie be plenerly assyldle;
Thane salle I seke sekirly my souerayne lorde,
Sir Arthure of Inglande, that auenaunt byerne!
ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,
Ostayande in this Oryente with awfull knyghtes."

"Fro qwylene come thoue, kene mane," quod the kynge thane,
"That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also?
Was thoue euer in his courte, qwylls he in kythi lengede?
Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte!
Well wele has thou wepte, and wysely thou sechis,
ffor thoue arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche."

"Me awghte to knowe the kynge, he es my kydde lorde,
And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambire;
Sir Craddoke was I callide, in his courte riche,
Kepare of Karlyone, vndir the kynge selfene;
Nowe am I cahchede owtt of kythi, with kare at my herte,
And that castelle es cawghte with vncowthe ledys."

Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes, 3515
Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hym fulle sone,
and tells him the dangers of the way.

The stranger says that he fears no dangers.

He is bound in pilgrimage to Rome.

Then he has to find Arthur of England.

He tells him that his name is Sir Cradok, a knight of Arthur's chamber, and keeper of Caerleon.

The king kisses and welcomes Sir Cradok.
He tells the villainy of Modred.

Saide, "welcome, sir Craddock, so Criste mott me helpe!
Dere cosyne of kynde, thowre coldis myne herte!
How faris it in Bretayne, with alle my bolde beryams?
Are they brettenede, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue?
Kene thou me kyndely whatte caasse es be-fallene; 3521
I kepe no credens to crafte, I knawe the for trewe."

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys;
for he wandreth has wroghte, sen thou a-waye passede;
He has castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,
Kaughte in alle the rentis of the Rownde Tabille;
He devise4 the rewme, and delte as hym likes; 3527
Dubbede of the Danmarkes, dukes and erlles,
Disseueride them sondirwise, and cites dystroyede,
To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,
He has semblede a sorte of selcouthie berynes, 3531
Souveraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,
Of Peygites, and paynymms, and proueide knyghttes
Of Irelande and Orgaile, owtlawede berynes;
Alle thaa laddes are knyghttes that lange to the mowntes,
And ledynge and lordechip^e has alle, ahS theme selfe
likes;
And there es sir Childrike a cheffayne holdyne,
That ilke cheualrous mane, he chargges thy pople;
They robbe thy religious, and ravishe1 thi nownes, 3539
And redy ryddis with his rowtte to rawnsone the pouere;
Sho Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,
And alle the cowntr6 of Kentt be couenawnte entayllide;
The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,
The holites, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,
Alle that Henguste and Hors hent in theire tyme;
Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,
Shrowghte fulle of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547
for to fyghte with thy ffrappe, whene thou them
assailles.

Bot 3itt a worde witterly, thowre watte noghte the werste!
He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wieffe holdis,
And wōnnys in the wilde bowndis of the weste marches, 
And has wroghte hire with childe, as witnesse tellis!
Off alle the wyes of this worlde, woo motte hym worthe, 
Ahs wardayne vnworthye womene to zeme!
Thus has sir Modrede merrede vs alle! 3555
fōr-thy I merkede ouer thees mowntes, to zene the the
sothe."

Than the burliche kynge, for brethe at his herte, 
And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede!
"By the rode," sais the roye, "I selle it revenge! 3559
Hym selle repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes!"
Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis;
Vnwynly this wyesse kynge, he wakkenysse his berynes,
Clepid in a clariouwe kynges and othire, 3563
Callys theme to concele, and of this cas tellys,—
"I am with tresone be-trayede, for alle my trewe dedis!
And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydis no bettire!
Hym selle torfere be-tyde, this tresone has wroghte,
And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde!
This es Modrede, the mane that I moste trastede,
Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,
With renttes and reches of the Rounde Table; 3571
Has made alle his retenewys of renayede wrechis,
And devysed my rewme to dyverse lorde,
To sowdeours and to Sarazenes owtte of serlondes!
He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes,
And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettire!
They hafe semblede on the see seuen schore chippis,
ffulle of ferrome folke, to feghte with myne one!
ffōr-thy to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579
ffōr to brettyne the berynne that has this bale raysede!
Thare selle no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,
That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez:
Sir Howelle and sir Hardolfe here selle be-leue, 3583
To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges;
Lokes in-to Lumbardy, that thare no lede chaunge,—
He discovers the enemy’s fleet.

And tendirly to Tuskayne take tente alls I byde; Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene they are rekkenede; Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede, Or elles alle the ostage, with-owttyne the wallys, 3589 Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones!"

Nowe bownes the bolde kyngewith [his] besteknyghtes, Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre; Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littille, 3593 Lyghte noghte in Lumbarddye bot whene the lyghte failede;

Merkes over the mowntaynes fulle mervaylous wayes, Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste; 3596 fierkes evynne in-to silawndresche with hys serse knyghttes;

With-in fyfteene dayes his flete es assembled, And thane he schoupe hym to chippe, and schownnes no lengere, 3599

Scherys with a charpe wynde over the schyre waters; By the roche with ropes he rydes one ankkere, Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede, With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyrs, 3603 Charggede evyne chekefulle of cheualrous knyghtes; And in the hyunter one heghte, helmes and crestes, Hatches with haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndyre, Prowdliche purtrayede 1 with payntede clothys, 3607 Iche a pece by pece prykkyde tylle other, Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they seme; And thus the derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre chippys, 3610 That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde. Than the royce and the renkes of the Rownde Table Alle ryally in rede arrayes his chippis;

Then he makes ready his ships for the battle,

That daye ducheries he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes, Dresses dromowndes and dragges, and drawene vpe stonys; 3615

1 MS. prutrayede.
The toppe-castelles he stuffede with toyelys, as hym
lykyde,
Bendys bowes of vys brothly thare-aftyre;
Tolowris tentyly takkelle they ryghttene,
Brasene hedys fulle brode buskedene one flones,
Graythes for garnysones gomes arrayes;
Gryme gaddes of stele, ghwyves of iryne,
Stițttelys\(^1\) steryne one steryne with styffe mene of armes;
Mony fufliche launce appone loftte stonudys,
Ledys one leburde, lordys and other,
Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,
One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez.
Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schire strandys,
Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware there
wedys.

The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,
Alle bare-heuvede for besye with beueryne lokkes;
And a beryne with his bronde, and ane helme betyne,
Mengede with a mawncelet of maylis of siluer,
Compaste with a coronalle, and couerde\(^2\) fulle riche;
Kayris to yche a cogg, to comfurthe his knyghttes:
To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—
"O Gawayne ! O Galyrane ! thies gud mens bodyes."
To Lothi and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys,
And to sir Lawncelot de Lake lordliche wordys,—
"Lat vs couere the kythe, the coste es owre ownne ;
And gere them brotheliche blenke, alle3one blod-hondes !
Bryttyne them with-in bourde, and brynne them thare
aftyre !

Hewe downe hertly 3one heythene tykes !
Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette 3ow myne honnde !"
Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,
Kaughte his comliche helme with the clere maylis ;
Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,
With corowns of clere golde clenliche arraiede ;

\(^1\) MS. Stirttelys. \(^2\) MS. couercede.
Bot *there* was chosene in *the* chefe a chalke-whitte maydene,
And a childe in hir arme, *that* chefe es of hevynne:
*With-owttene* changynge in chace, thies ware *the* chefe armes
Of Arthure *the* auenaunt, quwhylls he in orthe lengede.

His chief device is a picture of our Lady and the Child.
The sailors busy themselves to get the ships under weigh.

They strike across the stream and the strife begins.

There is great dashing together of ships.

Grapplings are thrown out.

A mighty struggle ensues.

Masts fall and kill the mariners.

Boardings are made and hand-to-hand fights take place.

Bot *there* was chosene in *the* chefe a chalke-whitte maydene,
And a childe in hir arme, *that* chefe es of hevynne:
*With-owttene* changynge in chace, thies ware *the* chefe armes
Of Arthure *the* auenaunt, quwhylls he in orthe lengede.

His chief device is a picture of our Lady and the Child.
The sailors busy themselves to get the ships under weigh.

They strike across the stream and the strife begins.

There is great dashing together of ships.

Grapplings are thrown out.

A mighty struggle ensues.

Masts fall and kill the mariners.

Boardings are made and hand-to-hand fights take place.

But there was chosen in the chief a chalk-white mayden,
And a child in his arm, that chief was of heaven:
With-ovtene changing in chace, these were the chief arms
Of Arthur the aunent, quwhyles he in orthe lengede.

His chief device is a picture of our Lady and the Child.
The sailors busy themselves to get the ships under weigh.

They strike across the stream and the strife begins.

There is great dashing together of ships.

Grapplings are thrown out.

A mighty struggle ensues.

Masts fall and kill the mariners.

Boardings are made and hand-to-hand fights take place.
Som gomys thourghhe-gyrde with gaddys of yryne,
Gomys gayliche clede \(^1\) englaymous wapene! 3684

Archers of Inglande fulle eagerly schottes,
Hittis thourghhe the harde stele fulle hertly dynntis!
Sonue hotchene in holle the heithenne knyghtes,
Hurte thourghhe the harde stele, hele they neuer! 3688

Than they falle to the fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,
Alle the frekkeste one frownte that to the fyghte langes;
And ilkone frechely fraystez their strenges, 3691
Were to fyghte in the flete with their felle wapyne.
Thus they dalte that daye, thire dubbide knyghtes,
Tille alle the Danes ware dede, and in the depe throwene!

The Danes of Modred's fleet are all slain.

The archers of England make havoc among the heathen knights.

The archers of England make havoc among the heathen knights.

The Danes of Modred's fleet are all slain.

The Danes of Modred's fleet are all slain.

Arthur's lords laugh to see their foes leap into the water.

All Modred's keen men are killed.

All Modred's keen men are killed.

Sir Gawaine gives the ships to his knights.

Sir Gawaine gives the ships to his knights.

Thus befell the false fleet.

Thus befell the false fleet.

But Modred the traitor has a land army of tried knights.

But Modred the traitor has a land army of tried knights.

Som gomys thourghhe-gyrde with gaddys of yryne,
Gomys gayliche clede \(^1\) englaymous wapene!

The archers of England make havoc among the heathen knights.

The archers of England make havoc among the heathen knights.

Sir Gawaine gives the ships to his knights.

Thus befell the false fleet.

But Modred the traitor has a land army of tried knights.
than it was slyke a slowde in slackes fulle hugge,
That let the kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyre;
for-thy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,
To loke of his lege mene, and of his lee knyghtes,
If any ware lamede or loste, life sife they scholde.
Than sir Gawayne the gude a galaye he takys,
And glides vp at a gole with gud mene of armes;
Whene he growndide, for grefe he gyrdis in the watere,
That to the gindylle he gos in alle his gylte wedys;
Schottis vpe appone the sonde in syghte of the lordes,
Sengly with vpe hys soppe, my sorowe es the more!
With baners of his bagys beste of his armes,
He Braydes vp on the banke in his bryghte wedys;
He byddys his baneoure, "buske thow be-lylys
To 3one brode batayle that one 3one banke houes;
And I ensure 3ow sothe I sall 3owe sewe aftyre; Loke 3e blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyne,
Bot beris downe of the beste and bryng theme o-dawe!
Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde on e the erthe;
3e haue my baneres borne in batailles fulle hugge;
We sall felle 3one false, the fende hafe theire saules!
flightses faste with the frappe, the felde sall 3e owres;
May I that traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,
That this tresone has tymbyrde to my trewe lorde!
Of siche a engendure fulle litylle joye happyns,
And that sall in this journee be juggede fulle euene!"
Now they seke ouer the sonde this soppe at the gayneste,
Sembles one the sowdeours, and settys theire dynytys;
Thorghhe the scheldys so schene schalkes they towche,
With schaftes scheueride schorte of thas schene launces;
Derfe dynytys they dalte with daggande sperys;
One the danke of the dewe many dede lyggys,
Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghtys;
The doughttyeste of Danemarke vndone are for euere!
Thus thas renkes in rewthe rittis theire brenyes,
And rechis of the richeste vn-rekene dynytis;
Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to the erthe.
Of the thraeste mene thre hundrethe at ones! 3756
Bot sir Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,
Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,
That bare of gowles fulle gaye, with gowces of syluere;
He gyrdes hym in at the gorge with his gryme launce,
That the growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre! 3761
With that boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye!
The kyng of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes.
Thayre avawwarde than alle voydes thare-asyre,
Ahs venqueste verrayely with mylant berynes; 3765
Metis with medilwarde, that Modrede ledys!
Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—
for hade sir Gawayne hade grace to halde the grene hille,
He had wirchipe i-wys wownnene for mer! 3769
Bot thane sir Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym wele
To wreke hym on this werlaughe, that this werremouede;
And merkes to sir Modrede amonje alle his beryns,
With the Mownttagus, and other gret lordys.
Than sir Gawayne was greuede, and with a gret wylle
flowters a faire spere, and freschely askryes,— 3775
"ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys!
fly one the, felone, and thy false werkys!
Thow salle be dede and vndone for thy derfe dedys,
Or I salle dy this daye, zif destanye worthe!" 3779
Thane his enmye, with oste of owtlawede berynes,
Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghttez,
That the traytoure be tresone had tryede hym seluene;
Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783
And leders of Lettowe, with legyons inewe,
Umbylappyde oure mene with launcez fulle kene,
Swodeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,
Sixty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787
Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,
Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes.
Thane sir Gawayne grette with his gray eghene,
ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde; 3791

1 grown struck out, and gryme written instead.
He wyster that *thay* wonnyde ware, and wery for-foughtene;
And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede.
And thane syghande he saide, with sylande terys,—
"We are with Sarazenes be-sett appone sere halfes!
I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde; 3796
Bot for to [see] vs supplysede, my sorowe es the more.
Bes dowghtty to-daye, 30ne dukes schalle be 3oures!
for dere Dryghttyne this daye, dredys no wapyne.
We salle ende this daye ahs excellent knyghttes, 3800
Ayere to endelesse joye withi angelles vnwemmyde.
Thofe we hafe vnwittyly wastede oure selfene,
We salle wirke alle wele in the wirchipe of Cryste.
We salle for 30ne Sarazenes, I sekire 3ow my trowhe,
Souppe with oure Saueoure solemnly in heuene,
In presence of that precious, prynce of alle other 3806
With prophetes, and patriarckes, and apostlys fulle nobille,
Be-fore his freliche face that fourmede vs alle!
3ondire to 3one 3aldsones, he that 3eldes hym euer,
Qwhylls he es qwikkke and in qwerte vnquellyde with handis,
Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socowrede with Cryste,
Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to heHe!" 3812
Than grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,
Agayne that gret bataille he graythes hym sone;
Radyly of his riche swerde he reghttes the cheynys,
In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare;
Bot ahs vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at the gayneste,
Wondis of thas wedirwyns with wrakfulle dynttys,
Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes; 3819
And thohe hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttille,
Bot wrekyts at his wirchipe the wrethe of hys lorde!
He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenfulle knyghttes,
That sterynemene in theiresterapesstone-dedethay lygge!
He ryvys the ranke stele, he rittes the mayles; 3824
Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was passede!
He felle in a fransye for ferseness of herte,
He feghtis and fellis downe that hym be-fore standis!
ffelle neuer fay mane siche fortune in erthe!

In-to the hale bataile hedlyngs he rynnys,
And hurtes of the hardiste that one the erthe lenges!
Letande ahs a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,
Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes!

3it sir Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttile,
Bot woundis of thas wedirwynes with wondirfulle dyntes,
Alls he that wold wilfully wastene hym selfene;
And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede,
That wode ahs a wylde beste he wente at the gayneste;
Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede;
Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-o-ther!

Than hemoues to sir Modrede amange alle his knyghttes,
And mett hym in the myde schelde, and mallis hym thorowe;
Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schouwnttes a littille,
He schare hym one the schorte rybbys a schaftmonde large!
The schaft schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,
That the schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys,
And schewede one his schynbawde, that was schire burneste!
And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to the erthe;
With the lussche of the launce he lyghte one hys schuldyrs,
Ane akere lenghe one a launde, fulle lothely wonide.
Than Gawayne gyrde to the gome, and one the groffe fallis;
Ahs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre!
He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with siluere,
And scholde haue slottede hym in, bot no slytte happenede;
His hand sleppid and slode o slante one the mayles,
And the tother slely slynges hym vndire:

With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes,
MORTE ARTHURE.
through the helmet and the head.

Gawaine is gone, the good man of arms!

King Frederick asks who he was.

Modred tells him that he was Sir Gawaine the good, the merriest, the kindliest, and the bravest of knights!

The hardiest of hand, the happiest in arms, the most courteous in hall!

Modred weeps and curses his destiny,

Thorowe the helme and the hede, one heyghe one the brayne:
And thus sir Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes, With-owttyne reschewe of renke, and rewghe es themore! Thus sir Gawayne es gone, that gyde many othire; firo Gowere to Gernesay, alle the gret lordys Of Glamour, of Galys londe, this galyarde knyghtes, flor glent of gloppyngnyng glade be they neuer!

K yng frodurike of Fres faythely thare-afytre, 3864 foraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte;
“Knew thow euer this knyghte in thi kithe rych, Of whate kynde he was comene? be-knowe now the sothe; Qwat gome was he this with the gaye armes, 3868 With this gryssioun of golde, that es one growffe fallyne? He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe!
Gyrde downeoure gude mene, and greuede vs sore!
He was the steryneste in stoure that euer stele werryde, fiore he hasstonayede oure stale, and stro}ede for euer!”
Than sir Mordrede with mouthe melis fulle faire; 3874 ”He was makles one molde, mane, be my towhe;
This was sir Gawayne the gude, the gladdeste of othire, And the gracijouseste gome that vndire God lyffede, Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes, 3878 And the hendeste in hawle vndire heuene riche;
The lordelieste of ledynges whylls he lyffe myghte, fiore he was lyone allossede in londes i-newe;
Had thow knawene hym, sir kynge, in kythe thare he lengede,
His konynge, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes, His doyng, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes, Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede the dayes of thy lyfe!”

3it that traytour aHs tite teris lete he falle, 3886
Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,
Went wepand a-waye, and weries the stowndys,

1 MS. gloppyngnyng.
That ever his werdes ware wroghte siche wandrothe to wyrke:

Whene he thoghte on this thynge, it thirllede his herte; for sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys; 3891

When that renayede renke remembirde hym seluene, Of reuerence and ryotes of the Rownde Table,

He remyd and repent hyme of alle his rewthe werkes, Rode awaye with his rowte, ristys he no lengere, 3895

ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys;

Then the traytoure treuntede the Tyseday thar-aftyre, Trynnys in with a trayne tresone to wirke,

And by the Tambire that tide his tentis he reris, And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendses,

And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede, 3905

One floode foughtene with his fleete, and fellyd theme o lyfe;

Bade hir ferkene oo ferre, and filee with hir childire, Whills he myghte wile hyme awaye, and wyne to hir speche,

Ayere in-to Irelande, in-to thas owte-mowntes, And wonne thare in wildernesse with-in tha wast landys.

Than cho zermys and zee at zorke in hir chamibre, Gronys fulle grysely with gretand teres, 3912

Passes owte of the palesse with alle hir pryce maydenys, Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir the wayes, Dighte hir ewyne for to dye with dule at hir herte;

Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile, Askes thare the habite in the honoure of Criste,

And alle for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde!

But whene oure wiese kynge wiste that Gawayne was landede,

He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes,

that ever he was fated to work such woe.

He repents of his wickedness and retreats,

goes into Cornwall,

and pitches his tents by the Tamar,

and from thence writes to Guinever,

bidding her fly into Ireland.

But she goes to Caerleon and takes the veil.

Arthur is grieved.
for Gawaine's rash landing, and follows him wading through the water.

He hastens to the field where ten thousand of the traitor's men and seven score of his own knights lie dead.

[leaf 94, back]

Arthur slays dukes and earls;

He seeks for the knights of the Round Table,

and finds Sir Gawaine lying dead.

With groans and tears he kisses the body.

He bitterly laments the good knight.

Gers lawneche his botes appone a lawe watre,
Londis als a lyone with lordliche knyghtes,
Slippes in in the sloppes o-slanthe to the girdylye,
Swalters vpe swyftly with his swerde drawene, 3924
Bownys his bataile and baners displayes,
Buskes ouer the brode sandes with breti at his herte,
feerkes frekkly one felde thare the feye lygges;
Of the traytours mene one trappede stedis, 3928
Ten thosandez ware tynte, the trewgne to acownt,
And certane on owre syde seene score knyghtes
In soyte with theire sourerayne vn-sownde are beleuede!

The kynge comly ouer-keste knyghtes and othire,
Erlles of Awfrike, and Estriche berynes 3933
Of Orgaile and Orekenay, the Iresche kynge,
The nobileste of Norwaye, nowmbirs fulle hugge,
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes;
And the guchede kynge in the gay armes 3937
Lys gronande one the grownade, and girde thoroweeweene!
The riche kynge ransakes with rewthe at his herte,
And vp rypes the renkes of alle the Rownde Tabylle;
Ses them alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one, 3941
With the Sarazenes vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte;
And sir Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,
Vmbegrippede the girse, and one grouffe fallene, 3944
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowlles,
His brand and his brade schelde al blody be-rouene;
Was neuer our e semliche kynge so sorrowfull in herte,
Ne that sanke hyme so sade, bot that sighte one. 3948

Than gliftis the gud kynge, and glopyns in herte,
Gronys fulle grisely with gretande teris;
Knelis downe to the cors, and kaught it in armes,
Kastys vpe his vmbreare, and kysis hyme sone, 3952
Lokes one his eye-liddis, that lowkkide ware faire,
His lippis like to the lede, and his lire falowede!
Than the corownde kynge cryes fulle lowde,—
"Dere kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede!" 3956
ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide!
Here es the hope of my hele, my happyng of armes!
My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede!
My concelle, my comforthe, that kepide myne herte!
Of alle knyghtes the kynge that vndir Criste lifede,
Thou was worthy to be kynge, thofe I the corowne bare!
My wele and my wirchipe of alle this werlde riche
Was wonnene thourgh the sir Gawayne, and thourgh his
witt one!

Allas!" saide sir Arthure, "nowe ekys my sorowe!
I am vttirly vndone in myne awene landes!
A dowttouse derfe dede, thou duelhs to longe!

Why drawes thou so one dreghe?
Witt one!

Than swe[l]tes the swete kynge and in swoune fallis,
Swafres vp swiftely, and swetly hym kysses,
Tille his burliche berde was blody be-rowne,
Alls he had bestes birtene, and broghte owt of life;
Ne had sir Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,
His bolde herte had broustene for bale at that stownde!
"Blyne," sais thies bolde mene, "thow blondirs thi
selfene,
This es botles bale, for bettir bees it neuer!
It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thynge hondes,
To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene!
Be knyghtly of contenaunce, als a kyng scholde,
And leue siche clamoure for Cristes lufe of heunene!"
"ffor blode," said the bolde kynge, "blyne salle I neuer,
Or my brayne to-briste, or my breste other!
Was neuer sorowse so softe that sanke to my herte,
Itt es fulle sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more!
Was neuersonsorowfulleasyghteseynewithmyneeyghenel
He es sakles supprysede for syne of myne one!
Downe knelis the kynge, and kryes fulle lowde;
With carefulle contenaunce he karpes thyse words,—
"O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe thow be-holde!
This ryalle rede blode ryne appone erthe;
It ware worthy to be schrede and schrynede in golde,
for it es sakles of syne, sa helpe me oure Lorde!"

Downe knelis the kyng with kare at his herte,
Kaughte it vpe kyndly with his clene handis,
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and couerde it faire,

And kayres furthe with the cors in kyghte thare he lenges.

"Here I make myn avowe," quod the kyng thane,
"To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwennue of heune,
I salle neuer ryvaye, ne racches vn-cowpylle
At roo ne rayne-dere, that rynnes apponne erthe;
Neuer grewhownde late glyde, ne gosshawke latt flye,
Ne neuer fowlse see fellide, that flieghes with wenge;
ffawkone ne formaylle appone fiste handille,
Ne 3itt with gerefawcone rejoyse me in erthe;
Pe regane in my royaltez, ne halde my Rownde Table,
Tille thi dede, my dere, be dcwly reuengede!
Bot euer droupe and dare, qwylles my lyfe lastez,
Tille Drightene and derse dede hafe done qwate theme likes!"

Than kaughte they vpe the cors with kareat theire hertes,
Karyed [it] one a coursere with the kyng seflene;
The waye vn-to Wynchestre thay wente at the gayneste,
Wery and wandsomdly, with woundide knyghte;
Thare come the prior of the plas, and professide monnkes,
Apas in processione, and with the prynce metys;
And he be-tuke thame the cors of the knyghte noble.
"Lokis it be clenly kepyd," he said, "and in the kirke holdene,

Done for derygese, as to the ded fallys,
Menskede with messes, for mede of the saule:
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,
And at the body be bawmede, and one erthe holdene,
3iff thou kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe
At my comyng a-gayne, 3if Crist wille it thole;
A-byde of the beryenge tille they be broughte vndire, 
That has wroghte vs this woo, and this were mouede."

Than sais sir Wychere the wy, a wyese mane of armes, 
"I rede ye warely wende, and wirkes the beste ;
Soiorne in this ceté, and semblle thi berynes,
And bidde with thi bolde mene in thi burghe riche :
Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castelles holdes,
And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,
ffor we are faithely to fewe to feghte with theme alle,
That we see in his sorte appone the see bankes." 
With krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis wordes,—

"I praye the kare noghte, sir knyghte, ne caste thou no dredis !
Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone,  4035
And I may hym see with sighte, or one hym sette hondis,
I selle evne amange his mene malle hym to dede,
Are I of the stede styre halfe a stede lenghe !
I selle [stryke] hym in hisstowre, and stroye hyme forener,
And thare-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,
And to hys modyre Marie, the mylde qwene of heuene !
I selle neuer soiourne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,
In ceté ne in suburbe sette appone erthe,  4043
Ne 3itt slomyre ne slepe with my slave eyghne,
Tille he be slayne that hym slowghhe, 3if any sleyghte happene :
Bot euer pursue the payganyes that my pople distroyede,
Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place thare me likes."  4047

Thare durstenorenke hymarest of alle the Rounde Table,
Ne none paye that prynce with plesande wordes,
Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne,
So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes !  4051
Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,
Derefull dreddlesse with drawppande teris ;
Kayeris in-to Kornewayle with kare at his herte,
The trays of the traytoure he trynys fulle euenne; 4055
And turnys in be the Treyntis the traytoure to seche,
fyndis hym in a foreste the Frydaye there-aftire;
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,
And with his freliche folke he has the felde nommene!
Now isscchewis his emmye vndire the wode eynys,
With ostes of alynes fulle horrebille to scheewe!
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche, with his myche pople,
floundes owt of the foreste appone fele halfes,
In seuen grett batailles semliche arrayede,
Sixty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle hugge,
Alle fyghtande folke of the ferre lanndes,
ffaire fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondes!
And alle Arthurs oste was amede with knyghtes
Bot awghtene hundrete of alle, entrede in rolles;
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghttis of Criste,
To melle with that multitude in thase man londis.
Than the royalle roy of the Rownde Table
Rydes one a riche stede, arrayes his beryns,
Buskes his avawmwarde, als hym beste likes;
Sir Ewayne, and sir Errake, and othire gret lordes,
Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare-aftyre,
With Merrake and Meneduke,¹ myghtty of strenghes;
Idirous and Alymere, thire auenaunt childrene,
Ayers with Arthure, with seuene score of knyghtes;
He rewlis the rerewarde redyly thare-aftyre,
The rekeneste redy mene of the Rownde Table,
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,
And syene comforthes his mene with knyghtlyche
wordes—
"I be-seke 30w, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde,
That 3e doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene!
Sflighttes fersely nowe, and fendis 3oure seluene,
fielliis downe 3one feye folke, the felde salle be owrs!
They are Sarazenes 3one sorte, vn-sownde motte they
worthie!"

¹ Or Menyduke.
THE FIGHT BEGINS.

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of our Lorde!

If they are slain they will be taken straight up to heaven.

3if vs be destayne d to dy to-daye one this erthe,
We sall he hewed vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde!

Looke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche; 4092

Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende!

Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me rekke,
Bes besy one my baners with 3oure brighte wapyns,
That they be strenghely stuffede with steryne knyghtes,
And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe; 4097

3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone.

Wirkes now my wirchipe, to-daye my werre endys!

Crist comly with crownne comforthe 30w alle, 4101

ffor the kyndeste creatours that euer kynge ledde!

I gysse 3ow alle my blyssyng with a blitie wille,
And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe!"

They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approches theme nere,
Pris mene and priste proues their strenghes;
Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumpees, 4107

In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghttes assembles,
And thane jolyly enjoynys theis jentylle knyghttes;
A jolyere journe ajuggede was neuer,
Whene Bretones boldly embraces their scheldes, 4111
And Cristyne encroysesd theme, and castis in fewtire!

Than sir Arthure oste his enmye askryes,
And in they schokke theire scheldes, schontes no lengare;

Schotte to the schiltrones, and schowttes fulle heghe,
Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche!

Redily thas rydde mene of the Rownde Table 4117

With ryalle rannke stele rittys theirse mayles;
Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,
Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre!

ffyghtande with fyne stele, the feye blod rynnys, 4121
Of the frekkeste of frounte, vn-fers ere be-levede.

Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges
Enverounes our avawmwarde with venymnos berynes; 4122

The vanguard is
MUCH BLOOD OF BOLD BRITONS IS SPILT.

Peghttes and paynymes with perilous wapyns,
With speres disspetously dissopyles oure knyghtttes,
And hewede downe the hendeste with hertly dynttys!
Thorow the holle batayle they holdene theire wayes;
Thus fersly they fyghte appone sere halfes.

That of the bolde Bretones myche blode spillis
Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in erthe,
The esteryneware thareso stedde, and stuffede wit[h]othire:
He durste noghte stire a steppe, bot stodde for hym seluene,

"Idrous," quod Arthure, "ayre the by-houes!
I see sir Ewayne ouer-sette with Sarazenes kene!
Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone!
Hye the with hardly mene in helpe of thy fadire!
Sett in one the syde, and socoure 3one lorde;
Bot they be socourrede and sownde, vnsawghte be I neuer!"

"If he be destined to die, Christ keep his soul!"

Arthur bids Sir Idrus rescue his father, Sir Ewayne.

Sir Idrus replies that his father has commanded him not to leave the king.

Idrous hyme ansuers earnestly thare-aftyre,—
"He es my fadire in faiithe, for-sake sallc I neuer,
He has me fosterde and feddle, and my faire bretherene,
Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe,
And sothely alle sybredyne bot thy selfe one;
I breke neuer his biddyng for beryne one lyfe,
Bot euer bouxyme as beste blethely to wyrke!
He commande me kyndly, with knyghtly wordes,
That I schulde leley one the lenge, and one noo lede elles;
I sallc hys commandement holde, 3if Criste wil me thole!
He es eldare thane I, and ende sallc we bothene;
He sallc ferkke be-fore, and I sallc come aftrye:
3iffe hymy be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,
Criste comly with crowne take kepe to hys saule!"

Than remys the riche kynge with rewthe at his herte,
Hewys hys handlys one heghte, and to the heuene lokes,—

"Qwythene hade Dryghttyne destaynede at his dere wille,
MODRED DISGUISES HIMSELF.

That he hade demyd me to-daye to dy for 30w alle!
That had I leuer than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme, 4159
Off alle that Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe
lengede."

Sir Ewayne and sir Errake, thes excellente beryns,
Enters in one the oste, and egerly strykes; 4162
The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,
Thay gobone of the gretteste with growndene swerdes,
Hewes one thes hulkes with theire harde wapyns,
Layed downe thes ledes with lothely dynttys; 4166
Schuldirs and scheldys thay schrede to the hawnches,
And medilles thourghe mayles thay merkene in sondire!
Siche honoure neuer aughte none erthely kyng
At theire endyng daye, bot Arthure hym seluene!
So the droughte of the daye dryede theire hertes, 4171
That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was the more!
Now mellys oure medille-warde, and mengene to-gedire.
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche with his myche pople,
He had hide hym e-hynde with-in thes holte eynys,
With halle bataile one hethe, harme es the more! 4176
He had sene the conteke al clene to the ende,
How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes!
He wiste oure folke was for-foughttene, that thare was
feye leuede;
To encowntere the kynge he castes hym e sone, 4180
Bot the charles chekyne hade chaungyde his armes;
He had sothely for-sakene the sawturoure engrelede,
And laughte vpe thrre lyons alle of whitte siluyre,
Passande in purpre of perrie fulle riche, 4184
ffor the kynge sulde noghte knawe the cawtelous wriche!
Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre;
Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe,
Karpis to sir Cadors thes kyndly wordez,— 4188
"I see the traytoure come zondyr trynande fulle zerne;
3one ladde with the lyones es like to hym selfene!
Hym salle torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones, 4191

Arthur wishes
that he might die
instead of his
knights.

Sir Ewayne and
Sir Errak per-
form great deeds
of valour before
they are over-
powered and
slain.

The centre of
Arthur's army en-
gages.
Sir Modred has
been watching
the battle, and
preparing to at-
tack the king.

But first he
changes his arms
to conceal him-
self.

But Arthur knows
him at once, and
points him out
to Sir Cador.

[leaf 97]
The two famous swords, Clarent and Caliburn, shall this day be tried one against the other.

Arthur recognizes his sword which he had left at Wallingford under the care of the Queen.

Sir Marrik fights with Modred and is forced to withdraw,

for Sir Marrik was marred with old age.

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, aHs I am trew lorde!
To-day Clarente and Caliburneallekythethemeto-gedirs,
Whilke es kener of kerfe, or hardare of eghge!
ffraiste alle we fyne stele appone fyne wedis.
Itt was my derlynge dayntenous, and fulle dere holdene,
Kepede fore encrownmentes of kynges enoynttede,
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erlyes;
It was burliche borne be the bryghte hiltes;
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes,
Bot euere kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene.
ffor I see Clarent vn-clede, that crowne es of swerdes,
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede;
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene,
Scho hade the kepynge hir selfe of that kydde wapyne,
Off cofres enclosede that to the crowne lengede,
With rynges and relikkes, and the regale of sfraunce,
That was sflowndene one sir s rolle, whene he was feye leuyde.

Than sir Marrike in malyncoly metys hym sone,
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes;
The bordoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,
That the schire rede blode ouer his brene rynys!
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,
Bot jitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes!
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euery ony syluer,
That was sir Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs,
In the wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede;
Thare-with the derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,
The tother with-drewe one dreghe and durste do none other;
ffor sir Marrake was mane merrede in elde,
And sir Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste strenghis;
Come none with-in the compas, knyghte ne none other,
With-in the swyng of swerde, that ne he the swete leuyd.
That persayfes oure prynce, and presses to faste.
Strykes in-to \textit{the} stowre by strenghe of hys handis; Metis with sir Mordrede, he melis \textit{vn-faire},—

"Turne, traytoure vntrewe, \textit{the} tydys no bettyre; 4227
Be gret Gode, thow salle dy with dynt of my handys!
The schalle rescowre no renke ne reches in erthe!"

The kyng \textit{with} Calaburne knyghtly hym strykes,
\textit{The} cantelle of \textit{the} clere schelde he kerfes in sondyre,
In-to \textit{the} schuldyre of \textit{the} schalke a schaftmonde large,
That \textit{the} schire rede blode schwede one \textit{the} maylys!

He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttille,
Bott schokkes in scharpely in his scheene wedys; 4235
The fielonne \textit{with} \textit{the} ffyne swerde freschely he strykes,
The fiellettes of \textit{the} fferrere syde he flassches in sondyre,
Thorowe jopowne and jesserawnte of gentille mailes!

The freke fichede in the flesche an halfe fotte large;
That derfe dynt was his dede, and doe was \textit{the} more
That \textit{euer} that doughtty suilde dy, bot at Dryghttyns wylle!

\textit{3itt} \textit{with} Calyburne \textit{his} swerde, fulle knyghtly \textit{he} strykes,
Kastes inne \textit{his} clere schelde, and coueres \textit{hym} fulle faire;
Swappes of \textit{the} swerde hande, als he by glentes, 4244
Ane inche fro \textit{the} elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,
\textit{That} he swounnes \textit{one} \textit{the} swarthe,\textsuperscript{1} and one swym fallis;
Thorowe bracer\textsuperscript{2} of browne stele, and \textit{the} bryghte mayles,
That the hilte and \textit{the} hande appone \textit{the} hethe ligges!
Thane frescheliche \textit{the} freke the ffente vpe rererys,
Brochis hym in withi the bronde to \textit{the} bryghte hiltys,
And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye.

"In faye," says \textit{the} feye kynge, "sore me for-thynkkes
That \textit{euer} siche a false theefe so faire an ende haues."
Qwene they had ffenyste \textit{this} feghte, thane was \textit{the} felde wonnene, 4254
And the false folke in \textit{the} felde feye are by-leuede!
Tille a fforetste they fledde, and folle in the greuys,

\textsuperscript{1} MS. swrathe. \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{2} MS. brater.
ARTHUR MOURNS OVER HIS DEAD KNIGHTS.

Modred's men are defeated and pursued.

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftyre;
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,
Mourtherys in the mouнтaygnes sir Mordrede knyghtes;
Thare chapyde neuer no childe, cheftayne ne other,
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot littylle!

Arthur finds the dead bodies of his knights.

Bot whene sir Arthure anone sir Ewayne he fyndys,
And Errake the anenaut, and other grett lordes,
He kawghte vp sir Cador with care at his herte,
Sir Clegis, sir Cleremonde, thes clere mene of armes,
Sir Lothe, and sir Lyonelle, sir Lawncelott, and Lowes,
Marrake and Meneduke, that myghty ware euer;
With langoure in the launde thare he layes theme to-gedire,

Lokede one theyre lighames, and with a lowde steuene,
AHs lede that liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis;
Than he stotays for made, and alle his strenghe faylez,
Lokes vpe to the lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272
Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swonne fallys,
Vpe he coueris one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene,—
“Kync comly with crowne, in care am I leuyde!
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre!
That me has gyfene gwerdones, be grace of hym seluene,
Mayntenyde my manhede be myghte of theire handes,
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe;
In a tenefulle tyme this torfere was rereryde,
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys!
Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,
Rebukkede with a rebawde, and rewthe es the more!
I may helples one hethe house be myne one,
AHs a wafulle wedowe that wanttes hir beryne!
I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myne handys,
flor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for euer!
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende!
Here es the Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,
And nowe in this journee alle my joy endys!”

[leaf 98]

Now he may weep and wrynge his hands, for his worship is gone for ever.
Thane relyes the renkes of alle the Rownde Table,
To the ryalle roy thay ride tham alle; 4292
Than assembling fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,
In sighte to theaire souerayne, that was vnsownde leuede;
Than knelis the crownde kynge, and kryes one lowde,—
"I thanke the, Godde, of thy grace, with a gud wylle;
That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows this beryns;
And vs has grauntede the gree of theis gret lordes!
He sent vs neuer no schame, ne schenchip in erthe,
Bot euer sit the ouer-hande of alle other kynges: 4300
We hafe no laysere now these lordys to seke,
flor zone laythely ladde me lame vo so sore!
Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none other;
Thare we may ryste vs with roo, and raunsake oure wondys.
Of this dere day wreke, the Dryghtene be louede, 4305
That vs has destaynde and denyd to dye in oure awene."
Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,
And graythes to Glasschenberye the gate at the gayneste;
Entres the Ile of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes,
Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire:
A surgyn 1 of Salerne enscherhes his wonde, 4311
The kyng seex be asaye that sownde bese he noyer,
And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—
"Doo calle me a confessour, with Criste in his armes;
I wille be howeselde in haste, whate happe so be-tyddys;
Constantyne my cosyne he salle the corowne bere, 4316
AHs be-commys hym of kynde, zifc Criste wille hym thole!
Beryne, forc my benysone, thowe berye zone lordys,
That in baytaille with brondez are broughte owte of lyfe;
And sythene merke manly to Mordrede childrene, 4320
That they bee slyghely slayne, and slongene in watyr;
Latt no wykkerde wede waxe, ne wrythe one this erthe;
I warne fore thy wirchip, wirke ahzs I bydde!
I fore-gyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene! 4324
3ife Waynor hafe ware wroghte, ware hir be-tydde!"

1 MS. susgyne.
Then he says "In manus" and his spirit passes away.

The barons of Britain bury Arthur at Glastonbury.

He saide *In manus* with mayne one molde whare he ligges, And thus passes his speryt, and spekes he no more!
The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire, Graythes theme to Glaschenbery *with* gloppynnande hertes,

To bery thare the bolde kynge, and brynge to *the* erthe, With alle wirehipe and welthe *that* any wy scholde.

Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngys, 4332

Dosse messes and matyns *with* mourninge notes:

Relygeous reueste in theire riche copes,
Pontyficalles and prelates in precyouse wedys,

Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes, 4336

Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,

Ladys languessande and lowrande to schewe;

Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,

That schewede at the sepulture, *with* sylande teris;

Whas *neuer* so sorowfulle a syghte *seen* in theire tyme!

Thus endis kyng Arthur, as auctors alegges, 4342

That was of Ectores blude, the kynge sone of Troye,
And of *sir* Pryamous, the prynce, praysede in erthe;

*ffro* thethene *broghte* the Bretons alle his bolde eldyrs

*In-to* Bretayne the brode, as *the* Bruytte tellys. 4346 *et c'.* explicit.

*Hic jacet Arthurus, rex q[u]ondam rex que futurus.*

Here endes Morte Arthure, writene by Robert of Thorntonne.

A. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit *benedictus*. *Amen!*

*1* Or thythen.

CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, BUNGAY.
INDEX OF NAMES.

Absolone, 2868.
Achinour, 1824.
Acres, 903, *Acre*.
Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Aufrike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa*.
Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle*.
Algere, 2837, 2847.
Alidoyke. See Aladuke.
Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Germany*.
Alyduke. See Aladuke.
Alymere, 4078.
Alysaundyre. See Alexandere.
Amazonnes, 584.
Ambyganye, 572.
Antele, 2829, 2837.
Anyone, 42, *Aniane (in France)*.
Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Arabia*.
Argayle, 4123, *Argyle*.
Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, &c.
Asye, 574, *Asia*.
Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of Avalon*.
Aufrike. See Affrike.
Aungers, 288.
Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon*.
Baldake, 586, *Bagdad*.
Barouns, 1908.
Basille, 907.
Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384.
Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne*.
Bayous, 587.
Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar, 2384, Bedwerc, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2238, 2379.
Bedwyne, 1408. Probably a mistake for *Bedwere*.
Belyne, 277.
Berade, 2384.
Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914, Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle, 1433.
Bernarde, Mounte, 566.
Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boyce</td>
<td>1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borghte</td>
<td>1698. A mistake for Brut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyce, Boys</td>
<td>See Boice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brabane</td>
<td>36, Brabant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bremyne</td>
<td>277.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bretayne</td>
<td>2095, 2330, 2362, &amp;c., Bretayne the brade, 106, B. the brode, 3579,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4346, B. the braddere, 55, 1699, B. the more, 1018, Britain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bretayne</td>
<td>852, B. the lesse, 36, B. the lyttyle, 304, Brittany.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bretaynes</td>
<td>1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretons, 1348, Bretowns,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4104, Britons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britayn</td>
<td>852.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britayne</td>
<td>852.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britayn</td>
<td>852.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britayn</td>
<td>852.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britayn</td>
<td>852.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brute</td>
<td>1695, Brutus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruytte</td>
<td>the, 4346, the Brute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryane</td>
<td>1606.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burdeux</td>
<td>38, Bordeaux.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burgoyne</td>
<td>36, 1018, 1241, 2383, Burgundy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cador</td>
<td>247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &amp;c., Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4188, Cadour, 259.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caerlyone</td>
<td>61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, Caerleon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calaburne</td>
<td>4230, Caliburne, 4193, Caliburne, 4242, Caliburn, Arthur's sword.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Came</td>
<td>2380, 2385.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capados</td>
<td>580, Cappadocia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capatoyle</td>
<td>the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capitoile, 96, the Capitol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardyfe</td>
<td>2498, Cardiff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carelele</td>
<td>480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, Carlisle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castelle Blanke</td>
<td>1225.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catrike</td>
<td>482.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayme</td>
<td>1311, Cain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayous</td>
<td>156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &amp;c., Kay,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arthur's chief butler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chartris</td>
<td>1619, Chartres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chastelayne</td>
<td>2952, Chasteleyne, 3028.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheldrike</td>
<td>2954.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chestyre</td>
<td>3914, Chester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childrie</td>
<td>3537.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christofre</td>
<td>2390.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarent</td>
<td>4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarybalde</td>
<td>2497.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarymownde</td>
<td>2497. See Cleremonde.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clegis</td>
<td>1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &amp;c., Clegys, 1692, 3635.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clemente</td>
<td>1828.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleremonde</td>
<td>1603, 4265, Cleremownde, 3635, Cleremownde, 1638.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleremus</td>
<td>1603, 1638.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clowdmur</td>
<td>1604.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clyme</td>
<td>the close of, 1639.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collbrande</td>
<td>2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = Caliburn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colome</td>
<td>623.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combe</td>
<td>3110, 3128, 3149, Como.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantyne</td>
<td>282, an emperour of Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantyne</td>
<td>4316, Arthur's heir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantyne</td>
<td>628, 848, Constantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cordewa</td>
<td>1866, Cordova.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornett</td>
<td>600, Cornette, 1909, Corneto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornewaile</td>
<td>1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewalle, 1637, Cornewayle,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>247, 1777, Kornewayle, 4054, Cornwall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Craddoke</td>
<td>3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF NAMES. 131

Crasyne, countas of, 3045.
Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580.
Crist, 136, 467, 482, &c., Criste, 227, 285, 296, &c., Cryste, 257, 308, 346, &c., Christ.
Cyprys, See Cirquytrie in Glossary.
Cyprys, 596, Cyprus.

Damaske, 578, Damascus.
Damyat, 578, Damietta.
Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke, 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, Denmark.
Danmarkes, 3610, Danmarkes, 3528, Denmark.
Danes, 3694.
Danuby, 622, the Danube.
Dauid, 3416.
Dauphine (?).
Delfyned, 2653, Dauphiné (!).
Dolphyne, 3023, 2970.
Doueret, 4052.
Duchemen, 1251, Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2534, Germans.

Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343, Hector.
Egipt, 576, 2200.
Elamet, 575.
Ermonye, 573, Armenia. See The Romans of Partenay, l. 1299, and Mr Skeat's note thereon.
Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, &c., Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558,
INDEX OF NAMES.

Gawayne, 2979, 3860, Gawayne, 1468, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew.


Gaynous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius.

Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, Genoa.

Gerarde, 2896.

Gernaide, 2943, Granada.

Gernesay, 3861, Guernsey.

Gerone, 863.

Geryne, 3708.

Glamorgane, 59.

Glamour, 3862.

Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glascbenbery, 4308, Glastonbury.

Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, Mount St Gothard.

Godfraye, 3430.

Golapas, 2124.

Golyas, 3419, Goliath.

Gothelande, 37, Gutlande, 3763.

Gowere, 3861.

Greece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, Greece.

Grekes, 602.

Grekkkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean.

Grisswalde, 3708.

Gryme, 1265.

Gutlande. See Gothelande.

Gyane, 37, Guienne.

Hamptone, 3031, Southampton.

Hardelde, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583.

Hawyke, 3541.

Henawde, 35, Hainault.

Henguste, 3545, Hengist.

Herygalle, 1742.

Herylle, 1742.

Hillary, 625.

Holaund, 35, Holland.

Hors, 3545, Horsa.

Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583.

Humbye, 3541.

Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, Jaffa, the ancient Joppa.

Idrous, 4078, Idrous, 4135, 4141. Idrus, 1439, 1510, Idrus fitz Eywayne, 1490, 1498.

Iene. See Geene.

Ienitalle, 2112.

Ierante, 2890.

Jerusalem, 3415, 3433.

Iewe, 2895.

Ihesu, 863, Jesus.

Inde, 573, India.

Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, Ynglande, 283, 710, 724.

Ioatalle, 2877.

Iolyan, 2889.

Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905.

Josephate, vale of, 2876.

Iosue, 2605, 3414, Joshua.

Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909.

Irritayne, 575.

Iudas, 2605, 3412, Judas Maccabaeus.

Iulius Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410.

Iulyus, 2877.

Karelyone, Karlyone. See Caerlyone.

Karolus, 3423, Charlemagne.

Kayone, 2380, a mistake for
INDEX OF NAMES.

Kayous, caused by the word Bayone in the line before.

Kayous. See Cayous.

Kent, 3542.

Kornewayle. See Cornewaile.


Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817, 1827, 1900.

Leo, 1971.

Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167, 3784, Lithuania.

Lewlyne, 1826.

Londone, 2418.

Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c. Lorryne, 429, 2418, 2531, &c.

Loth, 2081, 3637, Lott, 4266.

Lucerne, 3094.

Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c. Luceus, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86.


Lussesbeurghe, 2388, Luxembourg.

Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266.

Macedone, 603.

Makabee, 3413.

Marie, 2869, 3998, 4041.

Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marrike, 4209, Merrake, 4077.

Marschalle de Mowne, 1397.

Mawrele of Mauencez, 1918.

Mawrene, 1918.

Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, Metz.

Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne, 351, 428, Milan.

Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of Mentoche, 1919.

Merrake. See Marrake.

Messie, 3998, Messiah.

Meyes. See Mees.

Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M., 1069, Myghelle, 1166, St Michael.

Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, St Michael's Mount.

Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766, 3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711, 3874, 4221, 4226, &c. Mordrede the Malebranche, 4062, 4174.

Mownttagus, 3773.

Myghelle. See Mighelle.

Nauerne, 44, Navarre.

Nazarethe, 591.

Normandy, 834, Normaundye, 44.

Norwayne, 44, 3935.

Nylus, 591, the Nile.

Orcage, 572.

Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.

Origge, 1825.

Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934, Orkkenaye, 4163, Orkney.

Owghtreth, 234.

Pamphile, 588, Pamphilia.

Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039.


Paule, 2413.

Pavy, 3141, Pavye, 568, Pavia.

Pawnee, 3140.

Peghttes, 4125, Peygntes, 3533, Picts.

Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377, 1544, Persia.
INDEX OF NAMES.

Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883, Petire, 2646, Petyr, 1256, the apostle.
Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, Petir, 1610, Petire, 1543, Petyr, 1419, a senator.
Petyrsande, 352.
Peyghtes. See Peggittes.
Peyters, 40, Pointiers.
Porte Iaffe. See Iaffe.
Portyngale, 1028, Portugal.
Pounte Tremble, 327, 352, Pownte T., 3140.
Preter Iohne, 588, Prester John.
Prewsslande, 2788, Pruyslande, 604, 2835, Prussia.
Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, Priamus, 2595, 2646, Gawayne's prisoner.
Prouynce, 40, Provyaice, 2647, Provence.
Pruyslande. See Prewsslande.
Pryamous, 4344, Priam.
Pyn, 352, Pyse, 3141, Pisa.
Rawlaunde, 1607, Rowlande, 1745.
Raynalde, 1607, 1995, Raynalde, 1745.
Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785.
Reone. See Rone.
Reynes, 853.
Richeere, 1745, Richere, 1607, 1995, 2790.
Romayne, 310, 1704, 1733, Roman; pl. Romaynes, 120, 174, 221, &c. Romaynez, 1701, 1877, &c. Romayns, 1291, 1361, &c.
Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c.
Rone, 1338, Reone (? Roone), 424, Rhone.
Roodes, 597, Rhodes.
Rowlande, 1745.
Rowne, 1996, Rouen.

Salarne, 2586, Salerne, 4311, Salerno.
Sandowche, 447, Sandwyche, 490, 635, 720.
Satanas, 3812, Satan.
Sayne, 1336, Seine.
Scotland, 32, 292.
Segramoure, 1871.
Sessoynye, 1977, 2657, 2907, Sexone, 1664, Saxony.
Sessoynes, 3530, Saxons.
Sexone. See Sessoynye.
Sextenour, 1700, Sextynour of Lyby, 1625.
Soone, 2482, Saine.
Sotere. See Sutere.
Southampton, 3546.
Spanyolis, 3700, Spaniards.
Spayne, 999, 3162.
Spolett, 3161, Spoleto.
Spruyslande, 3162.
Surgenale, 3532.
Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, &c. Surrye, 590, 1626, 3312, Suryannde, 2657, Syria.
Sutere, 1627, 1910, Sotere, 1871.
Suters (?), 501.
Swaldye, 57.
Swetherwye, 47.
Swayne of Sweere, 2958.
Swynne, 47.
Tambire, 3902, Tamar.
Tartary, 582.
Thebay, 583.
Tholus, 39, Tolouse, 1567, Tou- louse.
Towelle, 1916.
INDEX OF NAMES.

Treyntis, (?) 4056.
Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343.
Troys, 1629, Troyes.
Turkayne, 2408. Read Tuskayne.
Turky, 582, Turkey.
Turkys, 1917, Turks.
Turoyne, 39, Touraine.
Turry, 234.
Tuschayne, 431, Tuskan, 3150, Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593, Tuscany.

Valence, 41.
Valewnc, Viscownte of, 2047.
Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025.
Vertennone vale, 3169.
Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048, 3164, Viterbo.
Vnwyne, 2868.
Vryelle, 1744.
Vryenee. See Ewayne.
Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216, Arthur’s father.

Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?) .
Vtolfe, 1622, 1868.
Vyenne, 41, Vienne (in France).

Wade, 964.
Walchere, 2680.
Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West Walys, 322.
Walschelande, 334, Wales.
Waltyre, 2495.
Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217.
Watlyng-strette, 450, Wallyng-street.

Wawayne. See Gawayne.
Waynor, Waynore, Waynour. See Gaynour.
Wecharde, 2495.
Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656, Westwale, 621, Westphalia.
Whycher, 2678, Wychere, 2680, 4025.
Wyghte, 334, the Isle of Wight.
Wynchestre, 4011.

Ynglande. See Inglande.

Jorke, 636, 3911, York.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

A, conj. and, 2522, 2797.
A, int, ah ! 320, 1671, 1791.
Abaischite, p.p. abashed, 255.
Abaiste, Abayste, p.p. cast down, 1423, 3737.
Abbayes, s. pi. abbeys, 3403.
Abillere, adj. comp. abler, 2635.
Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564, Aboue, 511, Abowene, 823, Abowne, 2060.
Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, prep. and adv. above. A.S. abu fan.
Accountes, v. 3 s. reckons, 1102;
1 s. acounte, make account of, care for, 405; inf. acownt, tell, 3029.
Actone, s. acton, 902, 3457; pl. aketounes, 2626.
Affraye, s. fright, terror, 3226.
Aftire, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c.
Agaste, adj. aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728.
Agayne, Agaynes, Agaynez, Agyns, prep. against, towards, 774, 1268, 2681.
Agayne-stande, v. resist, 3757; pl. agayne-stondes, 3126.
Ake, s. oak, 1096. A.S. ác.
Akere, s. acre, 3849.
Aketoums. See Actone.
Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, adj. old.
Alegges, v. pl. allege, 4342.
Alet, s. ailette, shoulder-plate, 2565.
Alfyne, s. a kind of wine, 202.
Alkyne, Alkyns, adj. of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244.
Allblawsters, s. pl. crossbow-men, 2426.
Alle-weldand. See Alweldande.
Allone, adj. alone, only, 541, 2312.
Allossede, p.p. renowned, esteemed, 3881.
Allos. See Als.
Alofede. Read Alosede, p.p. praised, renowned, 2418.
Alouer, adv. all over, 2027.
Alowe, v. praise, 1036; 3 s. alowes, 396.
Als, Allos, conj. as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590; also, 1194.
Alweldande, 397, Allo-weldand, 1059, adj. all-ruling, all-powerful.
Alynes, s. pl. aliens, 4061.
Amange, prep. among, 4037; adv. at times, sometimes, 1238.
Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c.
Amede, p.p. estimated, 4068.
Alynes, s. pi. aliens, 4061.
Alyner, v. 360. See Ones.
Ane, adj. an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661.
Anely, Anly, adv. only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981.
Anentis, prep. against, 2568.
Aries, adv. once, 360. See Ones.
Angers, impers. v. Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848.
Ankkere, s. anchor, 3601; pl. ankers, 740, ankyrs, 493.
Anlace, s. a sort of dagger, 1148.
“Besides the dagger, Chaucer, in his Canterbury Tales, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side.” Meyrick, Critical Inquiry into Ancient Armour, vol. ii. p. 100.
Anly. See Anely.
Anone, adv. anon, soon, 2716.
Ansuere, s. answer, 1324.
Anter. See Awnter.
Anterous, adj. adventurous, bold, 2524.
Apas, adv. with measured step, 4014.
Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Apponie, 4000, prep. upon.
Appairelles, v. pl. apparel, dress, 500; p.p. appayrelde, 2461.
Apparant, Apparaunt, adj. apparent, 1944, 2606.
Apparylle, s. apparel, 3365.
Apperte, adj. open, 688.
Appertly, 1478, Appertlyche, 589, adv. openly.
Appone. See Apone.
Approches, ref. v. pl. draw near, 4105.
Ar, Are, adv. & conj. before, 254, 331, 1722.
Arase, v. snatch away, 4098.
Arryfede, Aryefede, 600, Arryuede, 3905, p.p. come to shore.
As amies, (Fr.) to arms! 2717.
Asawte. See Assawte.
Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, v. try.
Asaye, s. trial, examination, 4312.
Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, v. 3 s. shouts, cries out; pl. ascriez, 1768.
Asches, v. 2 s. askest, 343; 3 s. askys, requires, 157; pret. aschede, asked for, 715.
Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, s. assault, 1697, 3012, 3053.

Assemble, s. assembly, 1578, 1852, 1962.

Assingnez, v. pl. assign, 727; pret. assingnyde, 240.

Assoylled, p.p. absolved, 3498.

At = to (with the infinitive), 1165.

At = that = what, 1842, 3484.

Atheliste, adj. noblest, 1593. A.S. æpele.

Attamede, v. pret. broached, pierced, 2175.

"He let atame hys pyement tuame
To make his gode gestis glad."

Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 130. bk.

"Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke,
or abbrochyyn. Attamino, depleo."

Promptorium Paralorum.

At-vndere, adv. down, 3180.

Atyre, s. attire, 4186.

Auctors, s. pl. authors, 4342.

Auditoure, s. auditor, 1673; pl. andytours, 661.

Awghte, Awnghte, adj. eight, 278, 2627, 3188.

Awghte, v. See Awe.

Aughtende, adj. eightth, 462.

Auncestres. See Auncstres.

Auntire, Auntyre. See Awnter.

Austerene, Austereyne, adj. stern, 306, 414, 571. &c. See Austerne
in Prickes of Conscience, l. 6181.


Avanttwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051. Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmwarde, 2829, 3165, Avawwarde, 3764, s. vanguard.

Avawbrace, s. vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568.

Auennaunt, adj. becoming graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500.

Aventaile, s. "a moveable front

to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quâ ventus hauritur." (—Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms, under Ventaculum) 910, 2572.

Auenture, s. adventure, chance, fortune, 642.

Avires, v. turns towards, directs, 3164. O. Fr. virer, turn.

Avisemente, s. advice, counsel, 148.

Aviselly, Auysseley, adv. advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165.

Avowe, s. vow, 296, 308, 347.


Auoyeddyde, v. pret. quitted, 2051.

Avyede, v. pret. showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716.

"Avier: Montrer le chemin à quelqu'un." Roquesfort. "Avier,
aveier, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin,
exciter, irriter; s'avoier, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se
diriger, s'occuper de quelquechose."

Burguy.

Awe, v. owe, 99; pl. awes, 455, ought; pret. awghte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c.; pret. subj. aughte, oughtest, 259; 'oughte,' as an impersonal verb, 1588, 1595, 3340, aughte, 3509. Me aughte =1 ought.

Awene, adj. own, 709, 997, 1594.

Aughtende, adj. eight, 462.

Auncestres. See Auncstres.

Auntire, Auntyre. See Awnter.

Austerene, Austereyne, adj. stern, 306, 414, 571. &c. See Austerne
in Prickes of Conscience, l. 6181.


Avanttwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051. Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmwarde, 2829, 3165, Avawwarde, 3764, s. vanguard.

Avawbrace, s. vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568.

Auennaunt, adj. becoming graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500.

Aventaile, s. "a moveable front
Awntere, Anter, Auntyre, v. adventure, 360, 1596, 1660; 3 s. anters, 1495; pl. awnters, 1596.

Awntrende, adj. adventuring, bold, 2717.

Awntrouseste, adj. most adventurous, 1624.

Awoighte. See Aughte.

Ayele, s. grandfather, 2603.

Ayere, Ayre, s. heir, 279, 283, 2634; pi. ayers, 3146.

Ayere, Ayre, v. go, 455, 470, 1591; 3 s. ayerez, 617; pi. ayres, 1329; i.p. ayreaude, 2830.


Ayware, adv. everywhere, 614.

Azoure, Azure, s. blue, 193, 765, 3355.

A3ayne, adv. again, 2713.

A3aynes, A3aynez, adv. against, 786, 2117, 2791. See Agayne.

A3ayne-stondes. See Agayne-stande.

Bacenett, s. cap of steel or other metal, sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2695, 2770; pl. bacenetz, 1754.

"He hutte him on pe helm on hiht, In-to pe Brayn porw Bacinet brilht; Thus is his seruyse yolde."

The Kyng of Tars (Vernon MS., leaf 306, b.)

Bachelers, Bachellers, s. pl. novices in arms, 68, 567, 1424.

Bade, v. pret. abode, 2383.

Bagis, Bagys, s. pl. badges, 2303, 3730.

Baiste, p.p. downcast, afraid, 2856.

Baite, v. feed, 2694.

Bake, s. back, 2203, 3257.


Bakhalfc, s. backpart, back, 1482.

Balde, adj. bold, 1968.

Baldly, adv. boldly, 630.

Bale, s. harm, grief, sorrow, 805, 3976; adj. hurtful, 1483. A.S. beuta.

Balefulle, adj. hurtful, 791; sorrowful, wretched, 1029, 1136.

Bale-fyre, s. a large fire, properly a fire lighted as a signal of distress, 1048.


Banarettez. See Banerettes.

Bandez, s. pl. bonds, 1485; used metaphorically for "distress," 1180.


Banerettes, Banarettez, Banarettez, s. pl. knights of the higher order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855.

Banke, s. shore (of the sea), 728, 3731; pl. bankkes, 3714.

Barayne, adj. barren, 224.

Barbours, s. pl. barbers, 2331, 2577.

Barbycane, s. outer fortification or defence, fortress at the outlet of a city, 1153, 2470.

Bare. See Bere.

Bare, s. boar, 3123.

Barefote, adj. barefoot, 2309.

Barchenedys, s. pl. boarheads, 177.

Bare-heuvedys, s. pi. boarheads, 177.

Bare-heuvede, adj. bareheaded, 3630.

Bare-legyde, adj. barelegged, 2192.

Baronage, s. company of barons, 587, 1242.

Barowes, s. pl. swine, 191. A.S. bearth.

Barrers, s. pl. barriers, 2469.
Basschede, p.p. cast down, 2121.
Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Batayle, 2458, Bataylle, 8107, Baytaille, 4319, s. battle; body of troops; pl. batailles, 1425, batailles, 4064.
Baterde, p.p. battered, 189.
Bathe, conj. both, 19, 34, 352, &c.
Baye, adj. bay, brown, 918.
Baytaille. See Bataile.
Baytand, i. p. baiting, 2516; baytaynde, 2067.
Be, Bee, prep. by, 60, 164, 174, &c.
Be, Bee, v. be; ind. pres. pl. bez, 97, bene, 2850; fut. 1. be (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4110; 2. bees, 1668, 2667, bese, 2663; 3. beez, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312; imp. pl. 2. bes, 3795, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737; bez, 222.
Bebled, v. pret. made bloody, 2250.
Beache, adj. beechen, 1713.
Bechopes, s. pl. bishops, 4128.
Becommys, v. becomes, is proper for, 4317.
Bedde, Bede, s. bed, 758, 805, 2855.
Bede, adj. craving, hungry, lean, 3464. See Beddy in Jamieson. A.S. biddan, to ask.
Bedes, v. pl. offer, 505.
Bedgatt, s. going to bed, 1030.
Bee. See Be.
Beerynes. See Berne.
Bees. See Be, v.
Begynndende, i. p. beginning, 2963.
Behalde, v. behold, 2517; i. p. behaldande, 3107.
Bekez, v. 3 s. bakes, warms, 1048.
Bekende, v. pret. committed, en-

trusted, 2340, 2355; bekennyde, 482.
Beknowe, v. acknowledge, confess, 3867.
Bekyre, v. contend, fight, 3679; pl. bekers, 2425; pret. bekerde, 2096.
Bekyne, s. beacon, 564.
Belde, v. dwell, 8; pl. bieldes, 1242; pret. beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38; p.p. byeldede, occupied, 566.
Belisede, 1250, Belcueded, 3405, Belcuedede, 2350, p.p. left.
Belene, v. remain, 3583.
Belyfe, Belyyne, adv. quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732.
Beme, s. beam, 3663.
Beneyde, Read Bendyde, v. pret. bent, 2424.
Bente, s. field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067.
Benysone, s. blessing, 4318.
Berde, s. beard, 1012; pl. berdez, 1002.
Bere, s. bear, 775, 790, 802.
Bere, v. bear, 51, 615; pret. bare, 291, 893; p.p. borne, 3735.
Berkes, v. 3 s. barks, 1351.
Bernakes, s. pl. barnacle geese, 189.
Berouene. Read Beronene, p.p. run over with, covered, 3946; berowne, 3971.
"On me [the cross] lay Ie lambe of love,
I was plater, his body above,
Whan flessche and veynes alle to-clove,
With blood I was bironne."
Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 128.

Berye, v. bury, 4318; 3 s. beryes, 2379; p.p. beryede, 980.

Beryelle, s. burial, 1776, 2188.

Beryenge, s. burying, 2377, 4023.

Bes. See Be.

Besautentez, s. pl. bezants, 3256.

Bese. See Be.

Bessomes, v. 3 s. besoms, i.e. sweeps, 3661.

Besy, adj. busy, 4095.

Besye, s. business, 3630.

Beseke, v. beseech; 3 s. besekys, 305; pl. besekes, 127; pret. besoghhte, besoughte, 1234, 1438, 3137.

Bestaile, s. beasts, cattle, 1050.

Beste, s. beast, 107, 811.

Betakenys, v. 3 s. betokens, signifies, 822, 824.


Beteche, v. hand over, deliver, commit, 1611; 3 s. beteches, 714; pret. betoke, 1889; betuke, 3190, 4015. A.S. betêcan.

Betoke. See Beteche.

Betrappede, p.p. entrapped, 1630.

Betuke. See Beteche.

Betwyx, prep. betwixt, 801, 2798.

Betyde, v. betide, 4325; 3 s. betyddes, 3482; betyddys, 4315.

Bett, v. pret. beat, 2470, 3862.

Bettes, v. ind. pres. pl. beat, 2808.

Betyne, adj. beaten; hence, adorned with beaten gold, or other such material, 3631, 3646, 3945.


Bewe, v. bow, 3366.

Bewes, s. pl. boughs, 3366.

Bewells, s. pl. bowels, 2175, 2203.

Bewschers, s. pl. (l) the lower parts of the body, 1047. A.S. scarn, bowels, &c.; bew = bel, beau, fine, perhaps.

Beyldede. See Belde.

Bez. See Be.

Bidde, v. bide, remain, 4028.

Biddis, v. ind. pres. pl. offer, 2310.

Bieldesz. See Belde.

Bierdez. See Birde.

Bilynge, s. probably the part of the ship about the bill or rostrum, 3663. A.S. bil, bill, beak, ... fore-part of a ship. (See Bosworth.)

Birdes, 2190, Birdez, 1029, Bierdez, 1032, Byrdez, 999, s. pl. women, ladies. A.S. brîd, bride, wife, woman.

Birenne, 2519. Mistake for “outene.”

Birtenede, 3972. See Brittene.

Blake, adj. black, 775, 1090, 4339.

Blanke, s. horse, 1799; pl. blankes, 1800. See Blonke.

Blasons, s. pl. shields of arms, 1860. See Blasoun in Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, l. 828.

Blawe, v. blow, 2662.


Ble, Blee, s. colour, complexion, 2576, 3332, 3558, 4213.

Blemeste, p.p. blemished, hurt, 2578.

Blandez, v. 3 s. blends, is mingled, 1799.

Blenke, v. blench, wince, 3640, 3735; 3 s. blenkes, 4213; cause to blench, overcome, 2857.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Bleryde, v. pret. mouthed, made wry faces, 752.
“Deucls sal gadir about hym þan,
And grymly gryn on hym and blere
And hydus braydes mak hym to fere.” Hampole’s Prick of Conscience, l. 2226.

Blethely, adv. blithely, cheerfully, 4147.

Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392, Blude, 3235, 4252, s. blood.
Blode-bande, s. blood-band, a bandage to stop bleeding, 2576.
Blod-hondes, s. pl. bloodhounds, 3640.

Blody, Blodye, adj. bloody, 793, 3946.

Blondirs, v. 2 s. blunderest, 3975.
Blonke, s. horse, steed, 453; pl. blonkes, 615, blonkkes, 1634. A.S. blanca, blonka.

Blude. See Blod.


Blyse, s. joy, 1485.

Blyssyng, s. blessing, 4103.

Bonettez, s. pl. additional pieces of sail, 3656. “Bonet (bonette, Fr.), an additional part made to fasten with latchings to the foot of the sails of small vessels with one mast, in moderate winds. It is exactly similar to the foot of the sail it is intended for. They are commonly one-third of the depth of the sails they belong to.” (Falconer’s Marine Dictionary, ed. Burney.)

Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730, 3641, Burde, 1930, s. board, table; board (of a ship).

Bordoure, s. border, 4211; pl. bordurs, 907.

Bordyrde, p.p. bordered, 1002.

Bore, s. boar, 188, 4214.
Borne, 2519. Perhaps a mistake for berne.
Borne, p.p. See Bere.
Bosturs, s. pl. boasters, 1393.

Bot, Bott, Botte, conj. but, 10, 70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925; bot if, bot 3if, bot 3ife, 356, 456, 250, unless; prep. without, 4070.
Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, s. amends, recompense. A.S. bot, bótu.

Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547, 2691, 2997, 3716, 4151.
Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976, Butelesse, 1014, adj. without remedy, cureless.

Bottes, s. pl. boats, 748.

Botures, s. pl. bitterns, 189. Probably miswritten for Botures; see Betowre in Iohn Russell’s Bote of Nurture, ed. Furnivall, ii. 421, 541, 696.

Boune, Bowne, v. make ready, prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013, 1034; 3 s. bownes, 3591, bounnez, 783.

Bourde. See Borde.

Bourdene, v. pl. pres. ind. jest, 3122; bouredez, 3 s. pres. ind. 1170.

Boure, s. bower, 2190. A.S. bür.

Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425, 3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous, 615, 775, 783, 1379, adj. rude, rough, harsh, violent.

Bouxome, 2858, Bouxvme, 4147, adj. obedient.

Bouxsomly, adv. obediently, 107.

Bowes, v. 3 s. turns, 2251; pl. bowes, go, 69, 2310.

Bowes, s. pl. shoulders, 188; boughs, 1711, 3247. A.S. bon, arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough. (Bosworth.)

Bowndene, p.p. bound, 3316.

Bowne, v. See Boun.

Bowne, adj. ready, 1633, 2331.
Box, s. stroke, blow, 1111.
Boyes, s. pl. 2122, 2856, 3122.
Boystous. See Boustous.
Bruce, v. fasten, fix, 1182; 3 s. bracez, puts on his arm, 914.
Bracer, 4247, s. brassart, a defense for the arm; pl. brasers, 1859.
Brade, adj. broad, 106, 914, 1094; comp. bradere, 55, 1699.
Bragge, v. blow (in a trumpet); pl. pres. ind. bragge, 1484, bragges, 4107; pret. braggede, 3657.
Braggers, s. pl. boasters, brag-garts, 1348.
Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914, Bramande, 2239, s. sword. A.S. brand, broad, brand, torch, sword.
Brankand, i. p. branking, i.e. bridling, checking, curbing, repressing, 1861. See Brank and Brawns in Jamieson.
Braste. See Briste.
Brathely, adv. hastily, violently, fiercely, 1771, 3219.
Braunchers, s. pl. young hawks, 190.
Braudescshe. See Brawndysche.
Brawle, Brawle, v. 2349, 2362; 3 s. brawles, 1349.
Brawlynge, s. confusion, 2176.
Brawnyches, s. pl. branches, 3367.
Brawndysche, v. brandish, 3359; 3 s. braundesche, 1056; pret. braundysche, 782, braundeste, 3657.
Brawne, s. bear, 1095.
Brayd, v. drive, thrust, dash, draw, 1172; 3 s. braydes, 2695, braydez, 2069, 2073, braydeyz, 906; p.p. braydene, cast, 3915.
Brayde, s. thrust, 3762.
Brede, s. bread, 2715.
Brede, s. roast meat, 79, 190, 1052; pl. bredez, 1049, bredis, 2715. A.S brede.
Bredc, s. breadth, 1224, 2011, 2273, 3656. A.S bredo.
Bredes, v. 3 s. breeds, 224.
Bregaundez, s. pl. brigands, 2096. "These foot-soldiers were clothed in jackets, which were quilted, and had pieces of iron within, hence called brigandines. Such jackets were worn in the time of Elizabeth and James I. by the English archers." Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms, under Brigantii.
Breke, v. break, 4146; 3 s. brekes, 3124.
Breklesse, adj. without breeches, naked, 1048.
Breme, adj. fierce, 1380.
Bremly, adv. fiercely, 4107.
Brené, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482, s. cuirass; pl. breneyes, 3753, brenys, 1525, 1558, bryneys, 4119. See Brini in the Glossary to Havelok; ed. Skeat.
Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680, adj. armed with a cuirass.
Breste, s. breast, 2253, front of an army, 1990; pl. brestez, 191.
Breystys. See Briste.
Brethe, s. wrath, anger, 107, 117, 2213.
Brethly, adv. angrily, 3661.
Brettened, Brettynye. See Brittene.
Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, s. bridge.
Briste, v. burst, break, 214; 3 s. bristez, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482; pl. bristez, 1859, breystes, 3663; pret. braste, 2176, 2271; pret. pl. broustene, 2544; p.p. brustene, 2771, broustene, 3974; weak pret. brystedde, 1129.
Brittene, 963, Brettynye, 3580, Brytynye, 106, 1350, s. cut or dash in pieces, destroy completely; pret. brettened, 1487, brittenede, 802, bryttenode, 2212; p.p. brettenede, 3520, brittenede, 1067, birtene,
3972. A.S. bryttian, brytian, to divide into fragments, distribute.

Broche, v. pierce, stab, 1172; 3 s. broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918; pl. brochez, spur, 1449; pret. brochede, broached, tapped, 2714; p.p. brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067.

Brochez, s. pl. spits, 1029.

Brode, adj. broad, 116, 792, 1047. See Brade.


Brokbreistede, adj. having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095. See Broched in Jamieson. Compare “Brock-faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger.” Brockett.

Bronde, s. sword, 2566, 3631; pl. brondes, 2300. See Brand.

Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, adv. hastily, violently, fiercely.

Brothy, adj. (l) foamy, frothy, 1090.

Browdene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, adj. woven. See Braveden in Sir Gawain and the Green Knight, ll. 177, 550. A.S. broden, broden, p.p. of bregdan, to weave, braid, &c. The “brenyes” were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other.

Bruchez, s. pl. brooches, 3256.

Bruschese, v. pl. brush, dash, 3650.

Brustils, s. pl. bristles, 1095.

Bryddes, s. pl. birds, 181.

Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, s. bridle.

Brygge. See Brigge.

Brymly, adv. fiercely, 117, 4214.

Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, v. burn; 3 s. brynmez, 1241; pret. brynte, 117; p.p. brynte, 3520.

Bryneyes. See Brene.

Brynyede. See Brenyede.

Brystedde, Brystez. See Briste.

Bryttenede, Bryttyne. See Brittene.

Burde. See Borde.

Burgesse, 3082, s. burgess, citizen; pl. burgseys, 557.


Burtleche, adv. grandly, 4199.

Burnescht, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnysie, 177, 1859, p.p. burnished, polished.

Bus, impers. v. behoves, 2576. Vs bus = we must.

Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, s. bushes.

Buschede. See Buske, v.

Buschement, s. ambush, 3124. See Enbuschement.

Buskayle. See Buscayle.

Buske, s. bush, wood, 453, 918; pl. buskez, 1142.

Buske, v. make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go; 3 s. buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073; pl. buskes, 1754, buskez, 720, 1618; pret. buskede, 1633; imp. 2 s. buske, 1263; imp. 2 pl. buskes, 2855; p.p. buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567; buske vpe, raise, 3072.

Bustous. See Boustous.

Butelise. See Botelesse.

Byd, Bydde, Byde, v. ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323; 3 s. byddez, 1776, byddis, 2361.
Byddynge, s. bidding, command, 1030, 1931.
Byde, v. remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968; 3 s. byddys, 4214; pl. byddes, 2808, byddez, 1030, await, wait for; imp. 2 pl. byddez, 629.
Byerns, Byeryne. See Berne.
Byggly, adv. bigly, strongly, 1376.
Byhalve, s. behalf, 1674.
Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, impers. v. behoves.
Byhyndene, adv. behind, 694.
Bylefede, 1538, Bylenede, 2145, 2366, Bylenefede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, p.p. left.
Bynne, prep. within, 804. A.S. binnan.
Byrdez. See Birds.
Byrre, s. impetus, violence, 3661.
Byswenkez, v. 3 s. toils, 1128. A.S. beswincan, to labour.
Byttes, v. 3 s. bites, 791.
Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, s. hap, occurrence.
Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, s. cabin; pl. cabanes, 733.
Cabilles, s. pl. cables, 3671.
Cachede, p.p. chased, 3513.
Cachene, v. pl. catch, seize, take, 834; pl. catchez, 480; pret. caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kaghwe, 3916; p.p. caughte, 3514, kaughte, 2995.
Caffe, s. chaff, refuse, 1064.
Caire. See Cayre.
Cantelle, s. corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231. "Chantel, Cantel, coin, quartier, moreau, chanteau." Burguy.
Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, s. captain; pl. captyayne, 838.
Captyte, 1589, s. captive, prisoner; pl. captifys, 1580.
Cave, 859, Kare, 1838, s. sorrow.
Carefull, adj. unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777.
Caremante, s. male, man, 957. A.S. carlman.
Carffes, s. pl. cuts, 2713.
Carle, s. fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165. A.S. carl.
Caryage, s. luggage, 2355.
Caste, v. cast, consider, purpose; 2 s. castes, 261; 3 s. castes, 1998; castis, 1769; pret. keste, 3354, keste, 118, 280, 943; imp. 2 s. kaste 3406; p.p. castyne, 819, 3240.
Castelles, s. pl. castles, 27, 849.
Cawtelous, adj. full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185. Fr. cauteleux.
Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, v. go; 3 s. cayres, 243; pl. cayers, 480. The original meaning was turn. A.S. cfyran, cærnan, to turn.
Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, adv. certainly.
Certez, 1162, 1342, Certys, adv. surely, certainly.
Certyfye, v. tell, inform, 1555.
Cety, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, s. city; pl. cetees, 2609, cetese, 1387.
Chaes, s. chace, 2269.
Champayne, s. champaign, level
country, 1226, 1362; pl. champagnese, 1822.

Changene, v. inf. change, 1405, chawnge, 2301; pl. changene, 2959, chaungene, 165; pret. chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2904; i. p. chaungawnde, 2523, chawngynge, 3267.

Chapes, s. pl. metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522. "Chape of a sellethe. Spirula." Prompt. Pare. "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword." Way in Prompt. Pare.

Chapyde, v. pret. escaped, 4260.

Charbokle, 3326, Charbecle, 2523, 3267, s. carbuncle.

Chare, s. (f) 3603.

Chare, v. (f) carry, 1886.

Charge, v. load, burden, charge, molest, &c.; 3 s. chargges, 3538; pret. chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406; p.p. chargede, 1549, chargeyde, 1552, chargygde, 3136, chargede, 3604, chargegide, 2731.

Chargour, 1026, s. dish; pl. chargeours, 155.

Charitee, s. charity, 1019, 1542.

Charottez, s. pl. chariots, 1552.

Charpe, adj. sharp, 3600.

Charre, s. car, 3914.

Charry, adj. (f) dear, cherished, 2964. Fr. cher, dear; chéri, cherished.

Chasse, s. chace, 2368.

Chasse, v. chase, 2237.


Chasyngespere, s. hunting-spear, 1823, 2955.


Chaunce, s. chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999; chawuse, 2368; pl. chauncez, 531, 2956.

Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chauncelere, 1541, s. chancellor.

Chawffe, v. become heated, 2301.

Chawmbyrs, s. pl. chambers, 3041.

Chayere, s. chair, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347.

Cheepe, s. chief (Her.), 2523.

Cheepe, adj. chief, 1363, 1404.

Cheekke. See Chekke.

Cheese. See Chese.

Chefeede. See Cheue.

Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, s. pl. chieftains.

Chekefulle, adj. chockfull, 3604.

Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000.

Cheekke, 1986, s. cheek, repulse; but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to success. In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy.

Chekyne, s. chicken, 4181.

Chekyrde, p.p. chequered, 3267.

Chele, s. cold, 3391.

Chere, s. face, countenance, 2069, 2964.

Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, v. choose; hence, choose a way, go towards; 3 s. cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225; pl. chesene, 1873; p.p. choses, 2731.

Cheualere, s. knight, 208, 1551; pl. cheualers, 2116.

Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheualrous, 1399, adj. chivalrous.

Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheualrye, 531, s. chivalry, knighthood, knights.

Cheue, 1117, 1841, Cheufede, 869; p.p. fared, thriven, succeeded.

Cheufe, v. pret. attained, 3329.

Cheueride, p.p. shivered, 3391.

Cheynes, s. pl. chains, 2522.

Chifayne, s. chieftain, 2732.

Childe, s. applied to a grown person, 2952; pl. childre, 1821, childre, 1035, children, 4078, childrenne, 845, 1051, childyre, 3208.

Chillande, i. p. chilling, cold, 2965.

Chippe, s. ship, 3599; chippes, 3546.

Chippe-burdez, s. pi. shipboards, 1699.

Chis, (?) 2217.

Clio, pron. she, 655, 659, 715, &c. See Scho.

Chokkefulle, adj. chockfull, 1552.

Chokkes, v. 3 s. (?) thrusts, 2955; p.p. chokkode, 3603.


Churles, adj. churlish, 4181.

Chymnes, 3041, Chympnes, 168, s. pl. brasiers, or other receptacles for fire, fireplaces.

Chyne, s. chine, backbone, 3390.

Cirquytrie, 3399, Cyrqwitrye, 2616 (wrongly printed Cyrrus witrye), s. pride, arrogance.

Cité, 1696, 1979, Citee, 60, s. city. See Ceté.


Clarioune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718, s. clarion, war-trumpet; pl. clarions, 1758.

Classpande, i. p. clasping, 4337.

Clasppis, s. pl. claspes, 909.

Clathe-sekkes, s. pl. cloth-sacks, 733.

Clauer, s. clover 3241.

Clauerande, i. p. clawing, 3324.


Clefe, v. pret. clave, split, 2559.

Cleffe, v. cleave, stick, cling, 1312.

Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123, v. 3 s. clutches, seizes.

Clene, adj. clean, pure, 201, 217, bright, fair, good, 1197, 1603.

Clenk ked e, v. pret. clanked, 2113.

Clenliche, Clenly, Cleynlyche, adv. well, 216, 625, 654, 1586, entirely, quite, 581, 673, 850, 2125.


Clere, adj. clear, bright, 819, 883, 909, illustrious, 1559, clear, free from obstacles, 1640.

Clereworte, s. 3241. Perhaps = A.S. cl&fer-wyrt, small clover.

Clergialle, adj. skilful, 1758.

Clergyally, adv. cleverly, 200.

Clergye, learning, 809.

Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, s. pl. clerics, scholars.

Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019, Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, s. pl. cliffs.

Clewes, See Clewes.

Clewez, s. pl. claws, 783.

Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, s. cliff; pl. cleyffez, 2019.

Clymbande, i. p. climbing, 3324, 3422.

Clynges, v. 3 s. presses, 1865.

Coblez, s. pl. cables, 742.
Coferez, 733, Cofirs, 2283, Cofres, 4206, *s. pl.* coffers, chests.


Coldis, *v. 2 s.* makest cold, chill-est, 3518.

Colurez, *s. pl.* colours, 819.

Comande, 2392, Comaundez, 1637, Commaundez, 71, *v.* 3 *s. pres.* *ind.* commands; *pret.* comande, 1218, comamande, 2356, comamundy, 1602, commande, 156, 4148; *imp.* commande, 1558.

Come, *v. inf.* 1584; *3 s. pres.* *ind.* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, comenez, 1439; *pl.* commez, 1545; *pret.* come, 80, 176, 2119; *i. p.* commande, 3468; *p.p.* come, 582, 865, cunning, 1419, comyne, 987.

Come, *s.* coming, 1203, 1565, 1812.

Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj.* comely.

Comes, *impers.* *v.* becomes, befits, 1579.

Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v.* comfort, strengthen; *3 s.* comforthe, 3151.

Comforthe, *s.* comfort, 3960.

Comlyli, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv.* in a comely manner.

Commande. *See Come.*

Comone, *v.* converse, 1580.

Comouns, 725, Comouns, 2353, *s. pl.* commons.

Compas, *s. outer part (of an enclosure)*, 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222.


Concelle, 259, &c. *See Counsaile.*

Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s.* council.

Condeythe, 3148, 3483, Coundyte, 475, Cundit, 444, *s.* safe conduct.

Condethes, *s. pl.* conduits, 201.

Condycone, *s.* condition, 1511.

Confundez, *v.* 3 *s.* confounds, 1922; *p.p.* confundede, 1153.

Connyngez, *s. pl.* conies, rabbits, 197.

Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v.* *pret.* won, gained; *p.p.* conqueride, 402.

Consayle. *See Concelle.*

Constable, *s.* 1585, 1590.

Contek, Contke, *s.* strife, 2721, 3669, 4177.

Contenance, Contenaunce, *s.* countenance, manner, behaviour, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.

Contré, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Courtré, 223, 2304, Cowntré, 3542, *s.* country; *pl.* contres, 3425, contreez, 27.

Connaye, *v.* convey, 1589, 1604.

Conynge, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 3202; *superl.* conyngeste, 809; konyngeste, 3177.

Cope-borde, *s.* cupboard, 206.

Copes, *s. pl.* 4334.

Coppe, *s.* cup, 2750.

Coppe-fulle, *s.* cupful, 3378.

Corage, *s.* heart, 536, 1725, 1922.

Corenalle. *See Coronalle.*

Corkes, *s.* carcase, 1091.

Corne, (?) 1786, 1837.

Cornettes, *s. pl.* 1758, 4108.

Cornuse, *s. pl.* horns, 1809. *Lat.* *cornu.*

Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Corenalle, 3258, *s.* a kind of ring or crown round a helmet; also, part of a lady's head-dress.

Corone, 291, Coroune, 28, Crowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426, 4202, Crowne, 3352, *s.* crown; *pl.* corowns, 3269, crownes, 51.
Coroune, 678, Crowne, 3185, v. crown; p.p. corounde, 142, corounde, 125, corownde, 1654, 2147, 3525, crowned, 3213, crowne, 3049, crownede, 3407.
Corroumppede, p.p. corrupt, 3478.
Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, s. corpse, body.
Corsaunt, s. holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See Corsant in English Gilds, p. 97, l. 3, and Corseynt, English Gilds, p. 188, l. 1.
Corvne. See Kerues.
Coseri, s. (?) 1582.
Coste, s. coast, 834, 877, 1787.
Cosyne, s. cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864; pl. cosyns, 50, 101.
Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, s. coat.
Couaitte. See Cowyte.
Couaty, s. covetousness, 1580.
Couaunde. Read Conamnde, adj. cunning, skilful, 558.
Couched, p.p. set, 909.
Coueite, 1191, Cowaitte, 51, Couette, 3325, v. covet; 2 s. pres. couettes, 1321; p.p. cowayte, 2307.
Couenawnte, s. covenant, 3542.
Couent, s. convent, 1220, 4021.
Couere, Couere, v. recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434; 3 s. coueres, 3644, coueris, 941, reaches; coueris vpe, gets up, 4274; pret. cowerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858; couerd vpe, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195; p.p. cowerede, won, 28, 3085.
Couere, v. cover, 1886; 3 s. pres. couers, 1110; pret. coueride, 3378, 3995; p.p. couere, 1770, 2115, coueride, 3047, 3098.
Couerte, adj. sheltered, 1780, secret, 1190.
Coundyte. See Condethe.

Conungé, s. leave, 479. Fr. cougé.
Counsaile, 291, Concelle, 144, 259, 1023, s. counsel, advice.
Counsayles, v. 3 s. advises, 305.
Countere, v. encounter, 1274; 3 s. counterez, 1848; p.p. counterede; 1893.
Countre. See Contré.
Coupable, adj. blameable, guilty, 1317.
Coupyle, v. pret. coupled, fastened, 2336.
Coursere, s. 1388, 2166.
Courtays. See Curtais.
Coutere, s. elbowpiece (in armour), 2557. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, l. 583.
Couthe, v. pret. knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340.
Cowardys, s. cowardice, 1693, 4186.
Cowayte. See Cowyte.
Cowchide, v. pret. lay down (as hounds); and hence, became meek and submissive, 122.
Cowle, s. a large tub, 1051. "Cowle, vesselle. Tina, Cath." Prompt. Parv. In English Gilds, ed. Toulmin Smith, pp. 371, 382, Cowle is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with.
Cowntas, s. countess, 3045; pl. cowntasses, 4337.
Cowntere, s. accountant, 1672.
Cownterez. See Countere.
Cowpe, s. cup, 209; pl. cowpes, 210, 237; cowpes, 3375.
Cowpez, v. 3 s. smites, strikes, 799, 2039; pl. cowpene, 2543.
Cowthe. See Couth.'
Crachynege, s. crashing, 3669.
Crafe, v. crave, 1681, 3522.
Crafte, s. skill, art, 752, 3667; pl. craftez, 254, craftys, 24.
Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, adv. skilfully.
Crafty, adj. skilfully made, 211.
Crage, s. crag, 876.
Cramede, p.p. crammed, 477, 1051.
Crasscheches, v. pl. pres. ind. crush, 3670; pret. craschede, 2114, craschede, 1109.
Crauaunde, adj. craven, 133.
Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, small vessels.
"And, for the Revictallyng and Refresshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two Crayers, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fifty [? fifteen] Tonnes, wherein shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other Crayer shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherein shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye" . . . .
"Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howard Capitaneum Generalen Armatorum super Mare (a.d. 1512)." Rymer, Fœdera, tom. xiii. p. 328, col. 2.
Creatoure, s. creature, 534, 859; pl. creatours, 4102.
Credens, s. credentials, 88, 3522.
Creest, Creeste, s. crest, 1108, 1133, 1185.
Creette, s. a kind of wine, 200.
Crepers, s. pl. grapnels, 3667. (Halliwell.)
Cresmede. See Crysmede.
Crouelle. See Crewelle.
Crowelle. See Crewelle.
Crownede. See Coroune, v.
Cruelle. See Crewelle.
Cruche, v. inf. crush, 1134.
Cryande, i. p. crying, 1137.
Crystenede, Crystnede, s. christened, 3337.
Crystyndome, s. Christendom, 2036.
Cristynmesdaye, s. Christmas-day, 70.
Cristynmesse, 64, Cristymesse, 839, Crystynmesse, 544, s. Christmas.
Cronycle, s. chronicle, 3445; pl. cronycles, 3218.
Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, s. cross; one crosse, across, 3667.
Crosse-dayes, s. pl. 3212.
Crosselettes, s. pl. 3336.
Cruelle. See Crewelle.
Crouene. See Corone.
Crownede. See Coroune, v.
Cruelle. See Crewelle.
Cruschene, v. inf. crush, 1134.
Cryande, i. p. crying, 1137.
Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysmede, 3185, adj. anointed with chrism.
Crystenede, Crystnede, s. christened, 3337.
Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, s. chrism.
Cukewalde, s. cuckold, 1312.
Cundit. See Condethe.
Cunvayede, v. pret. convoyed, 482.
Cure, s. care, 673.
Curius, adj. curious, 61.
Curlues, s. pl. curlews, 196.
Curtains, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, adj. courteous.
Curtaisie, s. courtesy, 1274, 1681.
Cury, s. cookery, 1063.
Dagges, v. pl. pierce, 2102; i. p. daggaune, 3749.

Dagswaynes, s. pl. garments "of frize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609. See Daggyweyne and notes thereon in Promptorium Parvulorum.

Dalte, Daltene. See Dele.

Damesels, s. pl. young ladies, 3044.

Danipnede, p.p. damned, condemned, 3277, 3299.

Danke, Dannke, adj. dank, damp, 313, 3750.

Dare, v. lie hid, lie still, 4007; 3 s. dares, 3225.

Daryn', or drowpyn', or prively to be hydde. Latito, lateo, Cath." Promptorium Parvulorum.

Darielles, s. a kind of dish, 199. See the recipe For darials in Liber Cure Cocorum, ed. Morris, p. 38.

Dauncesymge, s. dancing, 2030.

Daungere, Dawngere, s. power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935.

Daweyng, s. dawn, daybreak, 1601.

Dawez, s. pl. days; done of dawez, killed, 2056.

Dayntezez, s. pl. dainties, 199.

Daynteous, adv. dainty, 4196.

Dayntchely, adv. daintily, 723.

Debiles, 2934.

Dede, s. deed; pl. dedes, 48, dedys, 13.

Dede, adj. dead, 975, 1722.

Dede, s. death, 1253, 1935.

Dede-thrawe, s. death-pang, 1150.

Deesse, s. dais, 218.

Defadide, p.p. faded, 3304.

Defawte, s. default, 2939.

Defawtes, v. pl. are wanting, fail, 2928.

Deffuse, s. prohibition, 256. Compare "Defaix, defaiz, deffoiz, defois: Lieux defendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser; empêchement, défense." Roquefort. But it is more than probable that we ought to read "def[e]juse" = forbidding, prohibition.

Degré, s. degree, 84.

Dele, v. deal, 1278; pret. delte, 49, 3088; pret. pl. daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749; p.p. delte, 1216, 1277, 1564.

Delygens, s. diligence, 1934.

Delytte, s. delight, 1970.

Delyuerede, p.p. set free, 1688, 2081.

Demenys, v. 3 s. leads, 1988; pl. demenys, 4076. O. Fr. demeneur.


Depayntide, p.p. depicted, 3355.

Depez, s. pl. deeps, 750.

Depnesse, s. depth, 746.

Dere, v. hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200; 3 s. derys, 2099. A.S. derian.

Dere, adj. dear, 974, 1216.

Dereflulle, adj. 4053. Qu. for derffulle, full of pain or care. Compare derf, hardship, affliction, pain, in Stratmann.

Dereliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, adv. dearly.

Dereworthily, adv. preciously, 3251.

Derfe, adj. hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652.

Derflyche, adv. severely, 3277.

Derke, adj. dark, 754.

Derlynge, s. darling, 4196.

Derygese, s. pl. dirges, 4017.

Despyne, 183. See Porke despyne.
Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, s. destiny.
Destaynede, p.p. destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306.
Destrude, p.p. destroyed, 1181.
Deuer, s. duty, 1940.
Devisede, v. pret. divided, 3527.
Deuorande, i. p. devouring, 2054.
Deuotly, 296, Devottly, 347, adv. devoutly.
Dewly, adv. duly, 4006.
Deynttely, adv. daintily, 2643.
Diamawndis, s. pi. diamonds, 3297.
Dictour, s. spokesman, 712.
Dighte. See Dyghte.
Dischayte, s. deceit, 3789.
Discouerours, s. pi. scouts, spies, 3117.
Diskeueres, v. ind. pres. pl. search, 3119; imp. pl. 2. discoueres, 1641.
Disseuere, v. separate, 1575; 3 s. disseueruez, 1978; pret. disseueride, 3529.
Dispite, s. spite, 3163.
Disspyszede, p.p. despired, 269.
Dogge-sone, s. dog-son, 1072, 1723.
Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, s. sorrow.
Dolefullle, adj. sorrowful, 2054.
Dolphyne, s. 2054.
Dolnene, p.p. buried, 975.
Domesdaye, s. day of judgment, 1278, 3442.
Doo, v. do, 1934, 2322; 2 s. pres. ind. dose, 1954; pl. pres. ind. dose, 4333; p.p. donne, 1940.
Doubbeyd, 48, Doubbye, 3613, v. pret. dubbed.
Douce, adj. sweet, pleasant, 1251.
Dreglie, one, *adv.* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4819.

Dreghe, *v.* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437.

Dreghely, *adv.* enduringly, continually, 2028.


Drensche, *v.* *inf.* drown, 761.

Dreghely, *adv.* drearily, 2154, 2989.

Dresce, *v.* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array; 3 *s.* dresses, 2026, dresesse, 2833; *pret.* dresside, 579, drissede, 786, 1055, dresside, 1252, dryssede, 786; *p.p.* dresside, 1252, dryssid, 218; *p.p.* dresses vp = rears.

Druene, *Drife.* See *Dryffes*.

Drightene, 4008, *Dryglittene,* 1278, *Dryghtyne,* 3799, *s.* the Lord; *gen.* *Dryghtynez,* 1564. A.S. *Drihten.*

Druene, Drife. See *Dryffes*.

Druene, *Drynkles,* adj. drinkless, 4172.


Ducherye, *s.* duchy, 2400, 2937; *pl.* ducheres, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49.

Duche, *s.* duchess, 852, 974, 3044.

Duelle, *v.* dwell, tarry, abide, 3067; *pret.* duellede, 3321, duellyde, 219; *i.* *p.* duelland, 3445; *p.p.* duellyde, 1200.

Dukkes, Dukkez, *s.* *pi.* dukes, 723, 2029.

Dule. See *Dole*.

Dule-cotes, *s.* *pi.* mourning garments, 4336.

Dusperes, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperz, 2029, Duus suppliers, 723, Duusperis, 3751, Duuszeperis, 4336, *s.* *pl.* peers; lit. twelve peers (Fr. douze pairs). *Dusseperz,* *sg.* one of such peers, 2329, 2642.

Duttez. Read *Dinttez,* *s.* *pi.* strokes, 787.

Dyaperde, *adj.* 3251.

Dyghte, *v.* order, arrange, dispose, 1253; 1 *s.* dyghttes, 2625; *pret.* dyghte, 2970; *p.p.* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dighte, adorned, 3353.

Dynnynge, *s.* noise, 2030.

Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s.* stroke, blow; *pl.* dynettez, 1127, dynytys, 332.

Dysfegoures, *v.* *3 s.* disfigures, 2769.

Dyspens, *s.* spending, 538.


Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s.* stroke, blow; *pl.* dynettez, 1127, dynytys, 332.

Dysfegoures, *v.* *3 s.* disfigures, 2769.

Dyspens, *s.* spending, 538.


Dyuysyde, v. pret. divided, distributed, 49, 1389.

Efte, adv. again, 470, 529, 2349. A.S. eft.

Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591, Egyrly, 1499, ad. sharply, fiercely.

Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghne, 4194, s. edge. A.S. eeg.

Eghelynge, adv. edgewise, 3675.

Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358, s. pl. eyes. A.S. eeg.

Eghge. See Egge.

Egle, s. eagle, 2067, 2245.

Egree, adj. sharp, eager, 507.

Eke, conj. also, 44, 572.

Ekkene, v. inf. increase, 2009; s. pres. hid. ekys, 3965.

Elagere, 2977, is certainly miswritten. The alliteration requires *...; perhaps we ought to read sleghte, skill, dexterity.

Elare, adj. corn p. older, 4151.

Elde, s. age, 301, old age, 4220. A.S. yldo.

Elders, Eldyrs, s. pl. ancients, 13, ancestors, 99, 272, 293.

Elfaydes, s. pl. animals of some kind, 2288.


Emange, prep. among, 375, 1917, 2060. See Amange.

Ene, s. uncle, 1347. A.S. edm.


Enangylles, v. 3 s. en-angles, i. e. surrounds by troops formed in an angular figure (?), 3781. Comp. en-circles.


Embraces, v. pl. put on the arm, 4111; embrassez, 1753; p.p. embrassed, 2459, 2518.

Enbuschement, s. ambush, 1407, 3115.


Enclesside. Read Encloosede, closed, 2306.

Encloined, 479, Enclinede, 1706, v. pret. bowed.

Enclines, s. pl. bows, 83.

Enclosez, v. 3 s. 1134; p.p. enclosyde, 4206, enclosyde, 3238.

Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encounter, 3491, Encountere, 4180, v. encounter; pl. encounters, 2158; pret. encontrede, 1185.

Encorownmentes, s. pl. coronations, 4197.

Encroche, v. seize, obtain, 3426; 3 s. encrochez, 1243; pret. encrochoede, 2036; p.p. encrochede, 3525.

Encroysede, v. pret. crossed, 4112.

Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052, p.p. endented (Her.).

Endittede, v. pret. indited, composed, 3420.

Endordide, p.p. gilt, 199.

Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, adv. enough.

Enfablesches, v. pl. pres. become weak, 2484.


Enforce, v. exert; enforce great, 225; enforce, reinforced, 364.


Engendure, s. begetting, 3743.

Engayne. See Engynes.


Engowschede, p.p. swollen, in-

Engrelede, p.p. engrailed (Her.), 4182.

Engynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, s. pl. engines.

Engyste, v. assign lodgings, 445.

"Gister, giter: Assigner un gite." Roquesfort.

Enhorilde, p.p. surrounded, 3244.

See Ensoured in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B. 19 and Glossary.

Enis. See Eynes.

Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, v. pl. join in battle; pret. enjoynde, 2087.

Enkerly, adv. ardently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2539.

Enmy, Emyne, s. enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952; pl. enmyse, 1205, 1240.

Ennelled, p.p. enameled, 1294.


Enowe, adv. enough, 504.

Enpeyrede, p.p. impaired, damaged, 474.

Enpoysone, s. poison, 213.

Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, v. besiege; 3 s. ensegeyez, 623; p.p. ensegede, 1696.

Enserchede, 3942. Read Enserclede, encircled.

Enserches, v. 3 s. searches, examines, 4311; pl. enserches, 2466.

Ensure, v. assure, 1689, 2324, 3734.


Entire, v. enter, 1967; ind. pres. 3 s. enteres, 2007, 2387; pl. entres, 4309; pret. enteride, 2805; p.p. entirde, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrde, 1691.

Enverouynes, v. pl. environ, surround, 4124; pret. enverounde, went round or about, 2051, 2094; p.p. enverownde, surrounded, 3242.

Enueryde, p.p. (!) 1694.

Enyous, adj. 2047.

Enys. See Eynes.

Er, v. pl. are, 166.

Erberis, s. pl. gardens, 3245.

Ercheuesques, s. pl. archbishops, 67.

Ere, v. pl. are, 1538, 1582, 2547.

Ere, adv. before, 1840.

Erle, s. earl, 1659; pl. erles, 1904, erles, 3528, 3933.

Erledoms, s. pl. earldoms, 42.

Erles, s. pl. earnest, deposit, 2687.

Erne, s. pl. ears, 1086.

Ernestly, adv. 2838, 2903.

Errawnte, adj. arrant, 2895.

Erthe, s. earth, 109, 161.

Erthely, adj. earthly, 1664, 4169.

Es, v. 3 s. is, 16, 88, 89; pl. es (= are), 1666, 3443.

Eschape, v. escape, 1020, 2957; pret. eschappede, 1881, eschappide, 2367; p.p. eschapede, 1117, 3576.

Escheffe, v. 2301.

Escheue, v. attain, 3347; pret. escheuede, 3000, eschewed, fell out well, 2956, eschewed, met with good fortune, 1620; p.p. escheuyde, 3021, eschewed, 1539, 3027.

Eschewes, v. 3 s. draws back, retreats, 1116; pret. eschewede, 1881; imp. 2 pl. eschewes, 1750. "Eschiver, eskiver, escheveir, éviter, fuir, esquiver." Burguy.

Ese, s. case, 3208.

Este, adj. east, 1740, 3210.

Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, s. Easter.
Etene, p.p. eaten, 2716.

Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, s. pl. giants. See Etyn in Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ll. 140, 723. A.S. ećen.

Ettylle, v. purpose, 554; 3 s. etelles, 520, etles, 3077.

Ewene, 2073, Eevene, 4055, Euyne, 78, Eynye, 3596, Eyne, 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewynne, 618, 1122, Ewynne, 2961, adv. even, straight, right, just.

Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900, s. evensong, vespers.

Eueriche a, 2037, Euer-ilk a, 212, adj. every.

Euylle, adv. ill, 1117.

Ewen. See Euene.

Ewne, adv. evening, eve, 1006, 1788.

Ewynne, See Ewene.

Ewyne, Ewyncen. See Euenne.

Ewyre, adv. ever, 8.

Eye-liddis, s. pl. eyelids, 3952.

Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. See Eghene.

Eynes, 1283, 2308, Eynez, 1760, Eynis, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes, 2275, Eynis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466, s. pl. narrow passages, passes. A.S. enge, narrow, Germ. enge, a narrow passage.

Eynye, 1169, s. father.

Eadore, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre, 1169, s. father.

Fadone, s. fathom, 1103.

Fees, s. pl. foes, 403.

Faght. See Feghte.

Faire, adv. well, 1110, 3247.

Fairely, adv. nicely, 954.

Faylth, s. 1155.

Faithly, Faythly, adv. assuredly, 3864, 4031.

Fakene, v. pl. coil, 742. "Fake, one of the circles, or windings, of a cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed in the coil. . . . The fakes are greater or smaller in proportion to the extent of space which a cable is allowed to occupy where it lies." Falconer's Marine Dictionary, ed. Burney. Sc. fuak, a fold (Jamieson).

Falle, v. betide, 1006; 3 s. fallus, belongs, 2450.

Falow, adj. pale, 1402.

Falowede, p.p. turned pale, 3954.

Fals, adj. false, 1307.

Falsede, 3918, Falsesede, 2860, s. falshood, error.

Falterede, v. pret. quivered, 1092.

Fande. See Fynde.

Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fenne, 650, v. endeavour. See Fonde.

Fanne, v. seize, take, receive, 423; ind. pres. 3 s. fangez, 1005, 1249. See Fangene.

Fare, v. go, 3581; ind. pres. 3 s. fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.

Fare, s. journey, course, 393.

Fare-waye, s. course, 1357.

Farlande, s. foreland, 880, 984, 1158.

Farly. See Ferly.

Faucetez, s. pl. taps, 205.

Faughte, Faughtte, Fawghte. See Feghte.

Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, s. falcon; pl. fawcouns, 925.


Fawvelle, 2765. Read Fawuelle, s. a horse of a yellowish chestnut colour. "Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle: De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur le jaune, fœves, fulcus." Roquefort.

Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, s. little child, baby; pl. fawntekyns, 845.

Fawte, s. lack, 160, fault, 2737.

Fax, s. hair, 1078. A.S. feax.
Fay, *adj.* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3828; *fey,* 121, 517, *feye,* 2847.

Fay, Faye, *s.* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073.

Fayfully, *adv.* faithfully, 1715.

Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next; *qu.* falde, folded.

Fayne, *adj.* glad, 1160.

Faythefully, *adv.* 1345, 1735, 1913.

Faythely. *See* Faithely.

Feble, *adj.* weak, bad, 226, 2929.


Fellow. *See* Felle.

Feemene, *s.* *pl.* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488. *A.S.* *fæhoh,* cattle.

Feghte, 367, 1715, Fyghte, 1345, 1735, *v.* fight; 3 *s.* feghtys, 789, fyghttez, 2091; *pl.* feghtes, 1495, feghttez, 2163, feghtene, 2555; *pret.* faghte, 1174, faughte, 2164, faughtte, 1898, fawghte, 2799; *i. p.* feghtande, 4257, fyghtande, 4066, 4121; *p.p.* foghtene, 3019, foughtene, 1535, foughttene, 2365.

Feghte, *s.* fight, 4254.

Fegure, *s.* figure, shape, 781, 3301.

Fekille, *adj.* false, 2860.

Felde, 972, 985, Feelde, 1432, *s.* field.

Fele, *adj.* many, 845, 1247, 1496.

Fele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3237. *See* *felen* in *Stratmann.* *O.N.* *fela,* *M.* *Goth.* *fihan.*

Fele, *v.* feel; *pret.* felede, 1874.

Fecetez, 1158, Fecettes, 2174, 4237, *s.* *pl.* fillets.

Felewes, *v.* *pl.* follow, 2758.

Feleyghes, *s.* *pl.* felly, circumference of a wheel, 3308. *A.S.* *felyge.*

Felle, *s.* skin, 1081. *A.S.* *fell.*

Felle, s. mountain, 2489, 2509.

Felle, *v.* fell, 1139; 3 *s.* fellez, 1247; *p.p.* fellede, 1851, fellede, 2376.

Felle, *adj.* fierce, cruel, severe, 1401, 2769.

Felly, *adv.* fiercely, 2141.

Felowez, *s.* *pl.* fellows, companions, 1381.

Felschene, *v.* *inf.* (?) renovate, 1975. Halliwell has "*Felsh.* To renovate a hat."

Fende, *s.* fiend, devil, 871, 954; *pl.* fendez, 843.

Fente, *s.* (?) 4249.


Ferant, 2259, Feraunte, 1811, 2140, Ferawnt, 2451, *adj.* seemly.

Fercostez, *s.* *pl.* ships of some kind, 743. "*Farkost, Navis.*" *Verelius,* under the word *Kost.* *See* *Farcost* and *Fercost* in *Jamieson.*

Ferde, *p.p.* afraid, 403, 526, 3227; *s.* fear, 1875, 3069.

Ferdnesse, *s.* fear, 121, 2258.

Fere, *s.* fear, 3918.

Fere, *s.* companion; *pl.* feres, 1608, ferez, 1739, feris, 1578, ferys, 2126. *A.S.* *gefex.*

Fere, 1232. *See* Ferre.

Fere, *adj.* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017.

Ferk, *v.* move, go, 984, 1037; ferkke, 4152; 3 *s.* ferkez, 933, 949; *inf.* ferkene, 3907; *i. p.* ferkand, 1152, farkande, 2452.

Ferly, 2842, Ferlyche, 925, *adj.* strange.

Ferly, 2440, 2947, Farly, 2485, *s.* strange thing, wonder.


Fermysone, *s.* (?) some kind of sauce, 180.

Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 3547; fere,
Glossarial Index.

Ferrers, s. a kind of wine, 2714.

Ferriours, 2752. Read Forriours, foragers.

Ferrome, adj. far, foreign, 3578; o ferrome = afar, 856, 934, 2100.

Fers, 2161, Ferse, 1451, 1537, adj. fierce.

Fersely, 1115, 3402, Fersly, 1118, adv. fiercely.

Fersenesse, s. fierceness, 3826.

Ferthe, adj. fourth, 3412.

Ferthynges, s. pi. round spots, 3472.

Feryne, adj. far, foreign, 3711.

Ferynne, s. fern, 1875.

Ferys, 2098.

Fetche, v. 1188.

Feteled, p.p. fettled, set in order, 2149.

Fetheris, s. pl. feathers, 2098.

Fette, v. fetch, 557.


Feuerzere, s. February, 436.

Fewle, s. fowl, bird, 2071; pl. feulez, 926.

Fewtee, s. fealty, 112.

Fewtere, 1791, Fewtire, 1769, Fewtyre, 1366, s. rest for a lance.

Fewters, v. 3 s. lays in rest, 3775; p.p. fewteride, 1711, fewtrede, 1756, with spears in rest.

Fey. See Fay.

Feyede, v. pret. cleansed, wiped, 1114.

Feyne, (f) coyn, 1734.

Feyne = fine, v. cease, 1147.

Feyne, v. feign, 1913.

Feynte, adj. faint, 1874.

Feyntly, adv. faintly, 1734.

ff. Words beginning with ff are entered under single F.

Fichene, v. pl. fix, pierce, 2098; pret. fichede, 4239.

Fif, adj. five, 1756.

Fifte, adj. fifth, 3306.

Fillez, 1402, Fillis, 1038, v. 3 s. fills; p.p. fillede, satisfied, 1032.


Firthe, s. wood, 1708, 2144.

Fische-halle, adj. sound as a fish, 2709.

Fitt, v. fit, set in order, array, 2130; 3 s. fittes, 1989, fittez, 1755, 2072; p.p. fittyde, 2455.

Flammande, i. p. flaming, resplendent, 198.

Flappes, v. strikes, 2781.

Flawez, 773, Flawes, 2556, s. pl. blasts, gusts.

Flawmëde, i. p. flaming, 945, 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494.

Flawnke, s. flank, 1158, 2174; pl. flawnkkes, 2100.

Flay, v. frighten, terrify, 2779; p.p. flayede, 2441.

Flaye, s. flame, 772.

Flede. See Flee.

Fleete, v. float, 803; pret. fletyde, 3602.

Flemede, 2738, Flemyde, 1155, p.p. banished.

Flemesche, adj. Flemish, 743.

Flenges, v. 3 s. flings, 2762.

Felryande, i. p. gibing, scoffing, 1088, 2778. Sc. fleer.

Flesche, s. 1160, 2099.

Fleschez, v. pi. flit about, 926.

Flete, s. fleet, 1189.

Fleterede, p.p. (?) fitted for flight, 2097.

Flethe, s. (??) 2482.

Flieghes, v. 3 s. flies, 4002.

Flitt, v. shoot (with arrows), 2097.

Florenez, s. pi. florins, 885.

Flores, s. pi. fields, plains, 2694, 3249.

Floresche, v. flower, flourish, 2555; pret. floreschede, 3246; p.p. floreschede, 771, 1708, 3472; floreschte, 924, 1366.

Flour, s. flower, 1709, 1990; pi. flourez, 970.

Flourdelice, s. lily-flower, 3333.

Flowe, v. pret. flew, 772, 2100.

Floynes, s. pl. a kind of small ships, 743. A. Jal in his Glossaire Nàulique gives "Flouin. Nom d’un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l’aviron."

Flude, s. flood, 494.

Fluke, s. flounder, or other flat fish, 1088.


Flyeande, i. p. flying, 2451.

Flyngande, i. p. flinging, dashing along, 2757.

Flyschande, i. p. slashing, 2141.

Flysches, v. slashes, cuts, 2768.

Flyttyngge, s. shooting (with arrows), 2099.

Foddenid, p.p. produced, 3246.

Foghtene. See Feghte.

Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowilde, 3302, s. earth.

Fole, s. foal, 449, 2783.

Folily, adv. foolishly, 2841.

Followes, v. 3 s. follows, 1118; pl. folous, 1360.

Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, i. p. foaming.

Fome, s. foam, 1079.

Fonde. See Fynde.

Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, v. try.

Fondene. See Fynde.

Fongene, v. pres. pl. take, 2799; fongeze, 2753; pret. fongede, seized, 3308.

Foomene, s. pi. foemen, 3020.

Foonde, v. go, 366, 2489.

Forbere, v. forbear, 1913.

Forbrittene, p.p. cut up, slaughtered, 2273.

Forchipe, s. foreship, 3678.

Foreyere, adj. comp. stronger, 1176.

Fordremyde, p.p. wearied by dreaming, 3392.

Fore, prep. for, 256; conj. for, 1179.

Fore-breste, s. front, 1494, 1990.

Foregyffe. See Forgyffe.
Forejustyde. See Forjuste.
Sc. maigil, maigil, to mangle (Ja-
Forestayne, s. prow of a ship,
742.
Foretoppe, s. forehead, 1078.
Fore-trauillede, p.p. fatigued,
806.
Forfette, v. forfeit, 557;
p.p. forfe
tede, 1155.
Forfoughttene, p.p. wearied
with
Fornedede, s. forehead, 1080.
Forejuste, 2895, Forjustedete, 2088,
2134, 2098, Forejustyde, 1398, p.p.
overcome
Formaylle, s. female hawk, 4003.
Forraye, v. forage, 2489; 3 s. forraye,
1247; pret. forrayede, 3017.
Forreours, s. pl. foragers, 2450,
2901.
Forsake, v. refuse, 1686, 2734,
deny, 1945, 4142.
Forsey, adj. strong, powerful,
3300, 3307.
Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette,
1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161,
Forsterne, s. forepart of the stern,
3664.
Fortethe, s. front teeth, 1089.
Forthermaste, adj. first, 3330.
Fortethe, 2827, Forthis, 1850, v.
3 s. proceeds.
For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172,
Fore-thy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3346,
adv. therefore.
Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340,
adv. further.
Forthire, v. afford, furnish, 300,
1509.
Forthir
For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172,
adv. therefore.
Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340,
adv. further.
Forththynkkes, 4252, For-thynk-
ytes, 971, impers. v. repents; me
Forthrynke, p.p. trampled, 2150.
Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058,
Foyle, s. leaf, 2704.
Fraisez, 1248. Read Frayes, ter-
rifies.
Fraiste, Frayste, v. try, test, 435,
881, 3395; 3 s. fraystes, 1227; p.p.
Froh, 2774.
Froynede, adj. freckled, 1081.
Franche, adj. French, 1250.
Fransye, s. frenzy, 3826.
Fraye, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548,
s. company, troop.
Frappe, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548,
s. company, troop.
Frauncenez, s. liberty, 1248.
Frawghte, p.p. laden, freighted, 3547.
Frawnke, s. enclosure, 3247.
Frayede, p.p. frightened, 2260.
Fraynes, 507, Fraynez, 337, 954, 1441, s. 3 s. asks, inquires.
Frayste. See Fraiste.
Fre, Free, adj. noble, 1711, 3247.
Frechely, adv. (?) boldly, (?) freshely, 3691.
Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3808, adj. noble.
Freely, adv. 2072, 2140.
Freke, s. man, fellow, 557, 873; pi. frekes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898.
Frekke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekkly, 3927, adv. boldly.
Fremcly, 1360, 1451, Fremclyche, 2097, Fresclycbe, 2900, adv. freshely, briskly, vigorously.
Freschene, v. refresh, 1452.
Fresclyche, adj. fresh, 2502.
Fresone, s. (?) Friesland horse, 1365.
Frette, p.p. (?) rubbed, 2708. Fr. frotter, to rub.
Fretted, p.p. 1364.

Frithez, s. pl. woods, forests, 924.
Fro, prep. from, 3, 376, 1138.
Fromonde, s. (?) 1112.
Froske, s. frog, 1081. A.S. frosce.
Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownite, 2455, Frunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, s. brow, forehead, front.
Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, s. front of an army.
Frowarde, adj. perverse, 3345.
Froyte, s. fruit, 2492, 2707; pl. froytez, 3246.
Frumentee, s. a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180. See the recipe in Liber Cure Cocorum, ed. Morris, p. 7.
Frunt. See Frount.
Frusche, s. dash, charge, swift attack, 2900.
Frykis. See Freke, s.
Frysthez, 1248. Read Frythez, spares.
Frythes, v. pl. spare, 2159; imp. 2 pl. 1734; p.p. frythede, 656.
Fude, s. food, 160, 2486.
Fulfille, v. fill up, 3438.
Fulle, adv. foul, 1154, 2436.
Fulsomeste, adj. foulest, 1061.
Fundene. See Fynde.
Furlange, s. furlong, 873, 946, 1538.
Gardwynes, s. pl. guerdons, rewards, 1729.
Garette, s. watch-tower, 562, 3104.
"pe garettes oboven pe yhates bryght
Of pe ceté de heven, I lyken þus ryght,
Tylle þe garettes of a ceté de gold,
pat wroght war, als I before told,
Of fynne euralle and ryech rubys,
And of other stanes of gret prys..."  Hampole's Prickie
of Conscience, ll. 9101-9106.
Garnisone, 3105, Garnysone, 2471, 2655, Garsyse, 3007, s.
garrison.
Garte.  See Gere.
Gas.  See Goo.
Gate, s. going, 4144, road, 4308.
Gayliche, Gaylyche, adv. gaily, 913, 2655, 3462, 3654.
Gayne, v. avail, 165; 3 s. gaynes, 4303; pl. gaynez, 1731.
Gayneste, adj. nearest, 487, 1041, 3006.
Gayspande, i. p. gasping, 1462.
Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gyannte, 1122, 1222, s. giant; pl.
geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908.
Gedlynges.  See Gallynges.
Gedyre, v. gather, 592.
Gemows, s. pl. hinges, 2893.
"Gymowe of a spanyge.  Verti-
nella, gemella."  Promptorium Par-
vororum.  See Way's notes on this
word.
Genatours, s. pl. riders on jennets,
light horsemen, 2897.  "Génetaire,
génesteur, génète, génitaire : Sorte
de cavalier, suivant Philippe de
Commines."  "Genitaires : Cavale-
rie légère."  Roquefort.
Gentille, adj. gentle, well-born, &c., 987, 1161, 2088; superl. gentil-
este, 862.
Genyuers, s. pl. (=) 375.
Gere, v. make, cause, 3640; 3 s. gers, 3572, 3921; pret. garte, 1886, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975; gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept.
Gere, s. gear, tackle, 2539, 3008.
Gerefawcone, s. gerfalcon, 4004.
Gers. See Gere, v.
Gersoms, s. pl. treasures, 165, 1729.
Gerte. See Gere, v.
Gessenande, (?=) 2521.
Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238; s. coat of jazeran; pl. gesserawntes, 2909.
"Jazeran. Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvas covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs." Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms. "Jazerant, jazerant, ... cotte de petites mailles." Burgny.
Gestos, s. pl. stories, 2876.
Gettlesse, adj. without getting anything, 2737.
Ghywes, s. pl. gyves, fetters, 3621.
Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, conj. if.
Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, v. give; p.p. gifen, 1729.
Girdle, v. smite, 3709; 3 s. girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdes, 1470, gyrdis, 2563; pret. gerd, 2971; p.p. girdle, 3935.
Girdille, Girdytle, s. girdle, 3458, 3923.
Girse, s. grass, 3944.
Gladchipe, s. gladness, 59, 928.
Gladdex, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, v. 3 s. gladdens, encourages; pl. gladdene, 928.
Glade, adj. glad, 1386.

Glade. See Glydez.
Glauerande, i. p. talking foolishly, 2538.
Glayfè, s. 3761. "Glaive. A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff...." Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.
Gledys, s. pl. sparks, live coals, 117.
Glent, s. stroke, 3863.
Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glentys, 2780; v. 3 s. glances, glides.
Gleterande, i. p. glittering, 595, 1280, 2853.
Gliftis, 3949, Glyftes, 2525; v. 3 s. looks.
Gloppynyng, s. fright, amazement, 3863.
Glopyne, v. terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, 3 s. glopynes, 3949; pret. glopnedec, 1074; imp. pl. 2. gloppyynes, 2853; i. p. gloppyençaande, 4329.
Glored, v. pret. stared, 1074.
Glotone, s. glutton, 1074.
Glydez, v. 3 s. glides, 1371; pret. glade, 2972; i. p. glydande, 799.
Glyftes. See Gliftis.
Gobblede, adj. full of gab or derision, 1346. Sc. gabbed, loquacious.
Gobelets, s. pl. glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913. Compare Gobelot de glant = acorn-cup. (Roquefort.)
Gobone, v. (?) 4164.
Gode, adj. good, 3476.
Gole, s. 3725. "A ditch or small stream." Halliwell.
Golet, s. gullet, 1772.
Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409; s. man; pl. gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684. A.S. guma.
| Goo, v. go, 213, 1279; 3 s. gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3104; pl. gosse, 497; imp. 2 pl. gose, 1266. | Gree, s. grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658. See Grease in Halliwell. |
| Gorge, s. throat, 3760. | Greesse-growene, adj. grown over with fat, 1101. |
| Gorgere, s. gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772. | Greffe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Greffe, 3007, 4324, s. grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow. |
| Gosse, 3104; pi. gosse, 497; imp. 2 pi. gose, 1266. | Grefes. See Grene, s. |
| Goresomere, s. gossamer, 2687. | Grehownde, 3464, Grewhounde, 1075, Grewhownde, 4001, s. grayhound; pl. grewhoundez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521. |
| Gossehawke, s. goshawk, 4001. | Grekkes, adj. Greek, 594. |
| Goschawke, s. goshawk, 4001. | Grene, adj. green, 1266, 1281. |
| Gowes. Bead Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759. | Gresse, s. grass, 1131. |
| Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowlles, 3945, s. gules (Her.). | Grete, v. greet, 1282; 3 s. gretes, 1077; pl. gretes, 1233; pret. grette, 84, 3476. |
| Granges, v. groans, 2562. | Grete, v. weep; 3 s. gretes, 2062; pret. grette, 3790; i. p. gretand, 951, 3912. |
| Grassede, p.p. fattened, fat, 1091. | Grene, s. grove, 2540; pl. greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881. |
| Grayhondes. See Grehownde. | Gripe, v. seize, gripe, grasp, 3008; 3 s. grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1309. |
| Graynes, s. pl. 913, 3463. | Grisely, 3105, Grysly, 1075, Grysely, 951, Grveslye, 1469, Gry[s]-lych, 1101, adj. horrible, grisly. |
| Graythe, v. make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266; 3 s. graythes, goes, 1353, 1354, 3761; p.p. graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373. |
Grisely, 1462, 3950, Grisyely, 3912, Grisyelyche, 1373, adv. horribly.
Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, s. On g. = flat, sprawling.
Grome, s. groom, 2526, 3489.
Gronande, i. p. groaning, 1373, 3938.
Gronche. See Gruche.
Grouffe. See Groffe.
Groundene, 1371, 2972, Groundyne, 1461, p.p. ground, sharpened.
Grouffe. See Groffe.
Gronandene. See Groundene.
Gruche, 706, 2844, Grouche, 2819, v. be dissatisfied, grudge; pret. grychgide, 2557; up. grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462.
Grundyne. See Groundene.
Gryehgone, s. (graving) dawn, 2510.
Grylych, 1101. Read Gryslych, and see Grisely.
Gryme, adj. grim, 3621, 3760; superl. grymmeste, 3419.
Grymly, adv. grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813.
Grypes, Gryppes. See Gripe.
Grysely, Gryselyche, Grisyly. See Grisely.
Gychede. Read Guthede = goutted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937.
Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, adj. good.
Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, s. pl. goods.
Gudly, adv. well, 677, 3005.
Gumbaldes, s. pl. (l) dainties, 187.
Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, adj.
Hame-holde, adj. domestic, 1843.
See Hamald in Jamieson.
Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunce, 1157, s. haunc.
Handez, s. pl. hands, 1137.
Handilez, v. pl. handle, feel, 1156.
Handsomere, adj. comp. more handy, 2128.
Hannde-brede, s. hanclbreadth, 2229.
Hansemane, s. henchman, page, 2662; pi. hansemene, 2743. See Hememan in Jamieson.
Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, s. hap.
Happe, v. have good fortune, succeed, 2630.
Happene, v. 1269, obtain, 3433; p.p. hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304.
Happy, adj. fortunate, 1741, 2974.
Happynge, s. good fortune, succeed, 3958.
Harageous, adj. 1645, 1742, 1834, 2248, violent, stormy. (Wright.)
Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde, 3013, s. herald.
Harbergage, s. quarters, 2475.
Hardare, adj. comp. harder, 4194.
Harde. See Here, v.
Harilly, adv. closely, 1084.
Hardynes, s. boldness, courage, 3959.
Hare, s. hair, 1001.
Hare, s. 2504.
Harlotte, s. ribald, rascal, low fellow, 2446; pl. harlottenz, 2743. Not used in the modern sense.
Harmes, 2437, Harmez, 1842, v. 3 s. harms.
Harnayse, s. armour, 2629.
Harrawnte, v. (?) 2449.
Harske, adj. harsh, hard, 1084.
Has, Hase. See Hafe.
Hastyly, adv. hastily, quickly, 167.
Hathelle, adj. noble, 358, 1659, 1663; superl. hathelest, 988, hatheleste, 2109.
Hawberke, s. hauberker, coat of mail, 1156, 2078, 2552. Ger. halsberg.
Hawe, s. (?) 3704.
Hawle, s. hall, 3879.
Hawrawde. See Harawde.
Hawtayne, adj. haughty, 1058, 2612, 2910.
Hawtayne, (?) 3029.
Haylede, v. pret. projected, 2077.
Haythemene, s. pl. (?) heathen men, 2295.
Haythene, 1260, 2274, 1834, Heythene, 2285, 3642, He-thene, 1834, adj. heathen.
Hedde, v. behead, 2311.
Heddys-mene, s. pl. headmen, chief men, 281.
Hede. See Heuede.
Hede-rapys, s. pl. head-ropes, 3668.
Hedire, adv. hither, 2614.
Hedlynys, adv. headlong, 3829.
Hedoyne, s. (?) 184.
Hedyrwarde, adv. hitherward, this way, 25.
Hedys. See Heuede.
Heghe = hethe, heath, 2476.
Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe, 3471, Hey, 3407, 3485, Hye, 39, 58, Hyghe, 3014, adj. high; superl. hegheste, 3369.
Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194, 1119, adv. high.
Heghe, s. high place, height, 1146.
Heghely, adv. hastily, 2294.
Heghte = aughte, adj. eight, 2830.
Heghte = hethe, s. heath, 2295.
Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, s. height; pl. heghte, 795.
Hekes, s. pl. horses, 2284.
Heldede, v. pret. bowed down, inclined, 3368.
Hele, s. health, prosperity, 2630, 3958.
Hele, v. hide, conceal, 3286; pret. hillid, 1120; p.p. hillyd, 3606.
Hele, v. heal, be healed, recover, 3688; s. heles, 2209; pret. helyde, 1825; p.p. helyd, 3030.
Helme, s. helmet, 1832; pi. helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551.
Helmede, adj. having helmets, 1617, 3626.
Helych, adv. loudly, 1286.
Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, s. pl. borders.
Hende, adj. courteous, 167, 1135, 1283.
Hente, v. seize, take, receive; 3 s. hentes, 2917; pret. hente, 2973; p.p. hente, 1842, 3319.
Herbariours, s. pi. harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.
Herberde, p.p. harboured, lodged, 158, 166, 2050.
Herbergase, s. lodgings, quarters, 1255, 2255.
Here, v. hear, 12; pret. herde, 1285, harde.
Hercede, adj. haired, 1083.
Heretyke, s. heretic, 1307.
Herkene, v. hearken, 1646, 3899; imp. 2 pl. herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.
Herne-pane, s. brain-pan, skull, 2229.
Herte, s. heart, 251, 262.
Herte, v. take courage, 1181.
Hertelyche, 2551, Hertly, 1835, adj. severe.
Hertly, 3642, Hertely, 2991, adv. heartily, severely.
Heslyne, adj. of hazel, 2504.
Heste, s. command, 2294, 3368, 4307.
Hetches, s. pl. hatches, 3682.
Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, v. promise, assure.
Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, s. heath.
Hethely, adv. scornfully, 268.
Hethynge, s. scorn, 1843.
Hette. See Hete.
Heuande, i. p. rising, 3704.
Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, s. head; chief, 1344; pl. hedys.
Heudedede, p.p. beheaded, 463.
Heuene, 1167, 1201, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, s. heaven.
Hewe, s. hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524.
Hewedec, adj. coloured, 3252.
Howys, v. 3 s. raises, 4156; p.p. hewde, 4091.
Hey, adj. See Heghe.
Hey, s. See Hye.
Heyghe, adj. See Heghe.
Heyghe, s. See Hethe.
Heyly, adv. quickly, 464, 2663, 2920.
Heyndly, adv. courteously, 15.
Heynne, adv. hence, 2436.
Heynzous, adj. heinous, 268.
Heythene. See Haythene.
Highte, p.p. called, named, 2899.
Hillid, Hillyd. See Hele, v.
Hilte, s. hilt, handle of a sword, 1121; pl. hites, 2239, hitez, 1056, 1149.

Hiltede, adj. 2274, 2911.

Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, pron. her.

Hirste, s. wood, forest, 3369.

Hittez, v. 3 s. hits, 1112, 1125, 1149.

Hode, s. hood, 3459.

Hodles, adj. hoodless, bareheaded, 2308.

Holdene, v. pi. hold, 4128; p.p. holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166.

Hole, adj. hollow, 1083.

Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, adj. whole, all. See Hale.

Holly, adv. wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590.

Holpene. See Helpene.

Holte, s. wood, 1283, 1645; pl. holtez, 1259.

Hole, v. suppose, 2209.

Hopes, s. pl. (l) 2503.

Horde, s. treasure; pl. hordes, 3145.

Horse, adj. hoar, hoary, 1082.

Hornet, s. pl. horns, 1286.

Horse, s. 463; pl. horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721.

Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, adj. horsed, mounted.

Hostaye, v. lead a host, or make war, 555.

Hotchene, v. pl. hack, chop, 3687.

Houe, Hufe, 1688, v. tarry; 3 s. houes, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260; pl. houez, 1253, houys, 377, 2118; pret. houede, 2031; i.p. houande, 1643.

Hoursches, v. pl. (?l) rush, 2110.

House, v. dwell, 4284.

Howes. See Houe.

Howge. See Huge.

Howndrethe. See Hondrethe.

Howntes, v. pl. hunt, 4258.

Howselde, p.p. houesled; be h.= receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315.

Howsymge, s. dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285.

Hufe. See Houé.

Huge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2889, adj. huge.

Hukes, s. pl. 734. Miswritten for hakes, or hekes, horses.

Huke-nebbyde, adj. hooknosed, 1082.

Himde-fisch, s. houndfish, 1084.

Hundrethe, Hurmdrethez. See Hondrethe.

Hundace, s. fence, palisade, barrier, 1084.

Hunde-fisch, s. houndfish, 1084.

Hundrethe, Humndrethez. See Hondrethe.

Hurdace, s. fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.

Hurdez, v. 3 s. (?) lurks, 1010.

Hurles, v. 2 s. rushest, 262.

Hurtetz, v. 3 s. thrusts, 1772.

Hy. See Hye.

Hyde, s. skin, 1157.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Hye. See Heghe.
Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, s. haste.
Hye, v. hasten, 1645.
Hyely, adv. hastily, quickly, (or perhaps) loudly, 1058.
Hyene, adv. hence, 2582, 2744.
Hyme, pron. him, 1133, 1134.
Hymlande, (!) 2503.
Hyndire, s. hindpart, 3626.
Hynge, v. hang; s. hynnges, 3473; pret. hyngede, 281; i.p. hyn-gande, 1083; p.p. hynggyde, 3590.
Hynter, s. hindpart, 3605.
Hyrdez, s. pi. shepherds, 3245.
Hyre, pron. her, 854.
Hyttez, v. 3 s. hits, 1122, 1387.
Iche. See Ilke.
Iche, v. sally forth, rush out, 1412. O.Fr. issir.
Idene, (?) 3061.
If he = if, 420, 2438.
Il, s. isle, 4309; pl. ilez, 575, illes, 2359.
Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, pron. each one, each.
Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, adj. each. Often followed by a: ilke a, 53, 194, iiche a, 2144, 3062, yche a, 3634.
Illes. See Ile.
Imangez, prep. amongst, 3169.
In-come, s. coming in, 2009, 2171.
Ine = in, 1797.
Inewe. See Inowe.
Inglisce, s. English, 2529.
Inns, s. pl. dwellings, 3041.
Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, adv. enough.
Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, s. iron.
Iresche, 3934, Irische, 4123, 4161, adj. Irish.
Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, adj. wrathful.
Irouslye, adv. wrathfully, 2530.
Ischewe, s. issue, 1943.
Isschewis, v. 3 s. issues, 4060; pl. ischewis, 3116.
Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, adj. active, nimble; lit. leggy, from Fr. jambe, leg.
Japez, s. pl. tricks, 1398.
Jentille, Jentylle, adj. gentle, 115, 904, 3411.
Jerodyne, s. (?) 905.
Jerownde, adj. gyronny (Her.), 2891.
Jeryne, s. (?) 903.
Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte. See Gesserawnte.
Jocunde, adj. 2896.
Jogges, v. 3 s. jogs, thrusts, 2891, 2893.
Jolily, Jolyly, adv. gaily, handsomely, 245, 373, 2088, 4109.
Joly, adj. gay, trim, handsome, jolly, 3414; comp. jolyere, 4110; superl. jolyeste, 1658.
Jonede, p.p. joined, 2890.
Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, s. jupon.
Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnee, 2894, s. a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work.
Glossarial Index.

Jowelle, s. jewel, 862.
Joye, s. 1161.
Joyes, v. 3 s. rejoices, 2896.
Joyennyge, s. joining, encounter, 2133.
Joynez, v. pl. join, 2112.
Joynter, s. joint, 2893.
Juggez, s. pl. judges, 246.
Juniette, s. 1122.
Juny, s. June, 345.
Jupone. See Jopowne.
Jurnee. See Jorne.
Just, adv. 1123.
Justere, s. jouster, 3412.
Justyfye, v. execute justice upon, punish, 663.
Justynge, s. jousting, 1657, 2875.
Kabane. See Cabane.
Kaghite. See Cachene.
Kaire. See Cayre.
Kalander, s. calendar, roll, 2640.
Kalendez, s. pl. calends, 2371.
Kambe, s. comb, 3351.
Kampe, s. fight, 3670, 3701.
Kane, v. can, 2750.
Kare. See Care.
Kariede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, v. pret. carried.
Karpe. See Carpe.
Karyage, s. baggage, luggage, 2282.
Kaughte. See Cachene.
Kaunt, adj. stout, bold, 2195.
Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, s. key; pl. kayes, 3064.
Kayere, Kayre. See Cayre.
Kaysere, s. emperor, 1651, 1959; pl. kayseres, 1894, kaysera, 2391.
Kele, v. cool, 1839; pret. keled, 2712.
Kelle, s. caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3255.
Kembede, v. pret. combed, 3351.
Kempe, s. warrior; pl. kempis, 1003. A.S. cempa.
Kempe, v. fight, 2633.
Kene, v. tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876; pret. kende, 481, 2194, kende, handed over, 1590.
Kene, adj. keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 611, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669; comp. kene, 4194; superl. kene, 2721, 3490.
Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Ken1 943, adv. sharply, boldly.
Kenetez, s. pl. kennets, small hounds, 122.
Kepare, s. keeper, 3512.
Kepe, s. care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746.
Keppe, v. catch, seize, 3484.
Kepyenge, s. keeping, 4205.
Kerfe, s. cutting, 4194.
Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, v. 3 s. cuts; p.p. coruene, 211, 3335, 3673.
Keste. See Caste.
Ketille-hatte, s. helmet, 3516, 3995; pl. ketelle-hattes, 2993.
Keye. See Kay.
Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, s. church.
Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542, Kyghte, 3996, s. nation, country.
Kleuys. See Clewes.
Klokes, s. pl. claws, paws, 792.
Knafe, 2621, Knaffe, 2637, s. servant; pl. knaes, 2632, knaues, 3484; knaue = male, 850, 1025.
Knawe, v. know, 1003, 1581, 1672, acknowledge, 2637; s. knawes, 1317; pret. knewe, 2177; p.p. knawene, 475, 1654, knowene, 3259.
Knee, s.; pl. kneesse, 956, kneys, 4274.
Knele, v. kneel; s. knelis, 3951; pl. knelis, 3046; pret. knelyd, 1199, 2312; i.p. kneland, 1137, 4337.
Knyghte, s. 1138; pl. knyghttez, 1161.
Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619, Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, s. knighthood.
Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche, 506, 1218, 4083, Knyghtly, 1649, adj. knightly.
Knyghtly, 1707, 1724, Knyghttly, 1692, 1790, adv. knightly, like a knight.
Knyllles, v. pl. ring, 2353.
Kombide, p.p. combed, 1003.
Konyngeste, adj. most knowing, 3177.
Kosyne. See Cosyne.
Kowardely, adv. cowardly, 1923.
Krafty. See Crafty.
Kraftes, s. pl. crafts, 2543.
Krakede, v. pret. cracked, 3269.
Krayers. See Crayers.
Kreuellest, Krewelle. See Crewelle.
Krisome, 2636. See Crysume.
Krispane, i.p. crisping, 3352.
Kroke, s. crook, curl, 3352. Dan Michel uses the verb croki, to curl: "Of pise ydelenesse / ne bye p nat quitte pe men pet dop zuo grat payne ham to kembe and to pouri ine sseaweres and ine hare here wel to croki an to bleue be strengte." —Ayenbite of Inwyte, ed. Morris, p. 176. See Hecatok the Dane, ed. Skeat, Preface, p. vii, footnote.
Krouelle. See Crewelle.
Krysome. See Crysume.
Krysomede. See Crysmede.
Kwne, v. can, know, 1565; kwne thanke = return thanks.
Kydd, Kydde, Kyde. See Kidd.
Kyghte. See Kithe.
Kynde, s. nature, kind, 125 2385, 3049, race, 3867.
Kyndly, adj. natural, proper, good, 3883, 4188.
Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712, Kyndely, 3521, adv. naturally, kindly.
Kyne, s. kin, 2618.
Kyngryke, s. kingdom, realm, 24, 1272; pl. kyngrykes, 649, kyngrykez, 820.
Kynredene, s. kindred, 2604.
Kynsemane, 3898, Kynysse-mane, 1778, s. kinsman.
Kyrke. See Kirke.
Kyrnelles, s. pl. battlements, 3046.
Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024, 1191, s. kirtle.
Kyste, s. chest; pl. kystys, 2302, 2336, kystis, 2342, 2355.
Kythe. See Kithe.
Kythe, v. show, 1652, 4193.

Ladde, s. lad, 4302.

Lade-sterne, s. loadstar, the polar star, 751.

Ladily, adj. ladylike, 3254.

Ladysse, s. pl. ladies, 3081.

Laggene, v. pi. (I) get ready, 2542.

Laghte. See Lacchene.

Laghtirs, s. pi. laughters, 2673.

Lake, s. lack, 163.

Lakes, s. pi. lakes, pools, 960, 2149.


Langage, ft language, speech, 3477.

Lange, adj. long, 1103, 1269; one lange = along, 1045, 2703.

Lange, adv. long, 868, 1200; comp. langere, 550, 557, lengere, 736, 889.

Lange, v. belong; 3 s. langes, 403, lengez, 2082; pl. langez, 1244, langys, 244, lengez, 1410, 1479; pret. lengede, 1492, 2221.

Lannges, v. 3 s. longs, 383.

Languessande, i. p. languishing, 4338.

Lappe, s. lappet, 3254, rag, 3286.

Lappe, v. wrap, fold, enclose, 3292; pret. lappede, 2300.

Lapynge, s. lapping, 3235.

Large, adv. wide, away, 1040, deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376.

Largesce, s. liberality, bounty, 163.

Lasschene, v. pl. lash, smite, 2801.

Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt, 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, v. let; 3 s. lattes, lets go, dismisses, disperses, 1819; pret. lete, 3886.

Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez, 1076, s. pl. features.

Lathe, s. (?) displeasure, 458.

Latheliche, 3279, Laythely, 4302, adj. loathly, ugly, hateful.

Latte, Lattes. See Lat.

Laughene, v. pl. laugh, 3698; pret. lughe, 248.

Laughte. See Lacchene.

Launce, s. lance, spear, 1379; pl. launcez, 1159, 1754, lawnces, 2462.

Launches, v. 3 s. leaps, springs, 2560; pret. launschide, 194.

Launchez, v. pl. launch, throw out (?), 750.

Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, s. plain, lawn.

Laundone, s. (?) field, 1768. “Landon: ... petite lande, pâturage; terres remplies de broussailles.” Roquefort.

Lawe, adv. low, 154, 3720; superl. laweste, 2431; on lawe = down, 2281.

Lawe, adv. low, 1270.

Lawnches, v. 3 s. cuts, 3831.

Lawnde. See Launde.

Laye, s. (?) 3721.

Laye, s. law, religion, 2593.

Layere, s. lair, camp, 2293.

Layke, s. game, 1599, 3386, 4093.

Layne, v. conceal, 419, 2398, 2593.

Laysere, s. leisure, 2430, 3095.

Laythely. See Latheliche.

Layttede, v. pret. (?) 254.

Leberalle, adj. liberal, 2318.

Leburde, s. lee-board, 3624.

Leche, s. jelly, 194.

Lechene, s. heal, 2388.
Glossarial Index.

Lechye, p.p. cut into slices, 188.
Leod, s. nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997; pl. ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801.
Leod, s. lead, 750, 2300, 3954.
Leod, 1268, Leede, 154, v. lead, treat; pl. ledes, 303; pret. ledde, 1515, lede, 3350; p.p. lede, 1827, 1903.
Ledynge, s. rule, 3536, conduct, 3550.
Lee, s. shelter, 1446.
Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, adj. dear, lief; comp. leuer, 872, 1344, 1573.
Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, s. leave, permission.
Lefe, v. leave, 1340; pl. leues, remain; pret. lefte, 1516; p.p. lefeded, 1397, leenede, 848, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208.
Lefulle, adj. allowable, lawful, 130.
Lege, 1901, Lige, 1200, Lige, 1708, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2389, Lygge, 1518, adj. liege.
Legyaunce, s. allegiance, 2594.
Lele, adj. leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647.
Leley, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3054, adj. faithfully, honestly, truly.
Lemande, i. p. shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672.
Lenand. See Lene.
Lendez, s. pl. loins, 1047.
Lene, v. lean; pret. lenede, 2703; i. p. lenand, 1045, 2672.
Lenge, v. abide, remain, dwell, 72, 128, 152; 3 s. lengez, 129; inf. lengene, 1588.
Lengede, Lengez. See Lange, v.
Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, adv. longer.
Lenghe, s. length, 1102, 1126.
Lenghene, v. lengthen, 2845.
Leppe, v. leap, 2084; pl. leppyne, 3697, lepyys, 3696; pret. lepe, 3427; i. p. leppande, 1460.
Lere, v. teach, 1035.
Leskes, s. pl. loins, 1097, 3279.
Lesse, conj. lest, 2300, 2439.
Lesse, adj. false; withowtyne lesse = truly, certainly, 139.
Lesyng, 3079, Lesynng, 3721, s. losing.
Let. See Lette.
Letande, i. p. (I) appearing, 3831.
Lete. See Lat.
Letherly, adv. wickedly, 1268.
Lett, v. cease, desist, 2325.
Lette, v. hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721; pret. let, 3720.
Lette, s. hindrance, 92, 458.
Lettyng, s. hindrance, 371.
Leue. See Leefe.
Leue, v. believe, 702, 1097; 2 s. leues, 2593.
Leuenyng, s. lightning, 2463.
Leuere. See Leefe.
Leueré, s. delivery; hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform; and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078. See Livery in Halliwell.
Leues, s. pl. leaves, 1708.
Leuetsenaunte, s. lieutenant, viceroy, 646.
Leuez, v. 3 s. lives, 1731.
Lifeliche, adj. (?) real, actual, 3427.
Liffe, s. life, 430, 1820.
Lifte, v. pret. lifted, 3349.
Lige, Ligge. See Lege.
Liggez. See Lygge.
Lighames. See Lyghame.
Lightly, adv. 3287.
Likyz. See Lyke.
Likynges, s. pleasure, 130, 3381.
Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, s. face, visage. A.S. hlrear.
Liste, s. desire, pleasure, 12.
Liste, v. pret. desired, 4270.
Lofte; on lofte = aloft, 163, 916, 942; appone lofte = aloft, 2800, 3623.
Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, v. lodge; pl. luggegez, 2280; pret. luggede, 486; i. p. lugande, 1045.
Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke, 132, v. look; 3 s, lukeyz, 113; pl. lukkes, 751; pret. luked, 119, lukede, 1313; imp. 2 pl. lokez, 1640; i. p. lukande, 3108.
Lokkes, s. pl. locks, 778, 3280.
Lond, s. land; pl. londes, 878, londez, 427, 1691, 1933.
Londis, v. 3 s. lands, 3922.
Longez, v. pl. belong, 2828; pret. longgede, 3080.
Loo, int. lo, 974, 1349.
Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, s. praise, renown, good name.
Lordechippez, 1727, Lordechipez, 253, 646, Lordechippez, 1970, s. pl. lordships.
Lorfdliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570, 2032, 2281, 2541, adj. lordly.
Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely, 1818, 2227, adv. in a lordly manner.
Lorne, p.p. lost, 1153.
Losels, s. pl. rascals, wretches, 252.
Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, v. lose.
Lotes, s. pl. features, 1462. See Lates.
Lotherly, adj. loathly, horrid, ugly, 778, 3234.
Lotely, adv. horridly, 2074, 3849.
Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, adj. hateful, detestable.
Lowely, 3478, Lovelyly, 2292, adv. in a loving manner, kindly.
Lourerde, s. lord, 3918.
Lowe; on l. = aloud, 1781, 2032.
Lowe, s. flame, 194.
Lowkkide, p.p. closed, 3953.
Lowrande, i. p. lowering, looking sad, 1446, 4338.
Lowttes, v. pl. bow, 505; pret. lowttede, bowed before, 2634, 3285, 3408.
Loyotour, s. embroidery (Perry), 3252.
Lufe, s. some part of a ship, 744, 750. “Loof. The windward side of a ship... It is not easy to make out exactly what part of the ship the loof originally was. Du. loof is a rullock or oar-pin, scalamus, but the loof was a timber of considerable size, by which the course of the ship was directed; it would seem to be the large oar used by way of a rudder, or perhaps the tiller.” Wedgwood’s Dictionary of English Etymology.
Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381, s. love, sake.
Luffe, v. love, 1597; pl. luffes, 12.
Luffly, 3623, Lufly, 1459, adj. lovely.
Lufly, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche, 2674, adv. in a lovely manner.
Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Luggede. See Loge.
Lughe. See Laughene.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lukynge, s. looking</td>
<td>139.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lampe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2330, s. crowd, throng.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lunggez, s. pl. lungs</td>
<td>2168.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lussche, s. (l) thrust</td>
<td>3848.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutterde, adj. bowed, bent</td>
<td>779.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sc. luttaird. (Jamieson.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luyschene, v. pi. (?) lash</td>
<td>1459; pret. luyschede, 2226.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyarde, adj. gray</td>
<td>2542, 3280.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyefe, 2845, Lyfe, 1269, s. life; pi. lyfez, 405, 537; p.p. lyffede, 868.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyf, v. live</td>
<td>1903; 3 s. lyfles, 405, 537; pret. lykede, 599; i. p. lykes, 55, lykks, 1190, lykys, 32, 186, plesses; pret. lykke, 599; i. p. lykke, being pleased, 248, pleasing, 497, 2406.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyfte, s. sky</td>
<td>4272.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyghte, v. lighten, 2846; 3 s. lyghttys, 368; pi. lyghttys, 251.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyghte, v. lighten</td>
<td>2846; 3 s. lyghttys, 368; pi. lyghttys, 251.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyghtenande, i. p. lightening, flashing</td>
<td>2463.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lygmane, s. liegeman</td>
<td>420; pl. lyggemene, 1518.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyke, v. be pleased, rejoice</td>
<td>195; usually an impers. v. likez, 383, lykes, 55, lykkes, 1190, lykys, 32, 186, plesses; pret. lykke, 599; i. p. lykke, being pleased, 248, pleasing, 497, 2406.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lykke, s. pl. lympene, incur, 3119; lymp-</td>
<td>pede, gained, 3415, lympyde, 292 p.p. lympyde, incurred, suffered, 875.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lynd, s. tree</td>
<td>454, 486.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lynkwhyttez, s. pl. linnets</td>
<td>2674.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se. lintchite; A.S. lint, flax; lint-wig, flax-finch, linnet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyone, s. lion</td>
<td>139; pl. lyouns, 3234.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyppe, s. lip</td>
<td>119; pl. lyppys, 1011, lippis, 3954.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyre. <em>See</em> Lire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lys. <em>See</em> Lygge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lythe, 1653. <em>Read</em> Kythe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lythe, adj. gentle</td>
<td>1517, 1600.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lythe, v. listen</td>
<td>12; pl. lythes, 1810.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lytherly, adv. badly</td>
<td>1448.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lythes, s. pl. (l) leases, tenements, 994. See <em>Lith</em> in Glossary to <em>Havelok the Dane</em>, ed. Skeat, and <em>Lud</em> in Glossary to <em>William of Palerne</em>, ed. Skeat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lytheyr, adj. wicked, bad</td>
<td>23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lytill, 1021, Litylle, 1719, Lyttyle, 754, adv. or adv. little.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lytte, (l) little</td>
<td>550.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyue, s. life</td>
<td>1775, 3067, 3520.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lywinge, s. living</td>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ma, adj. more</td>
<td>1829.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mace, s. 4210.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mache, s. match</td>
<td>4070.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machede, p.p. matched</td>
<td>1533, 2904.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maches, s. (?) 2950.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Made, s. madness</td>
<td>4271.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magestee, 1236, Maiestee, 1303, s. majesty.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938, 3652, s. master.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maisterede, v. pret. mastered</td>
<td>2683.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Makk, s. companion, fellow, 1166.
Makles, adj. peerless, matchless, 3875.
Malle, v. hammer, beat, 3038, 4037; 3 s. mallis, 3841.
Maluesye, s. a kind of wine, 236.
Malyncoly, s. 2204, 4209.
Man, adj. See Mayne.
Manace, s. menace, threatening, 3383.
Manacecle, v. pret. threatened, 1383.
Manere, s. manor, 4310.
Manere, s. manner, 1383.
Mangere, s. 1588. Qu. Mangree, ill will.
Manhede, & manhood, 399, 434, 4278.
Manliche, adj. manly, 2417.
Manrede, s. homage, service, 127.
Manykyne, adj. of many kinds, 3174.
Manys = man's, 76.
Marasse, 2505, Marras, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, s. morass, marsh.
Marche, s. frontier, boundary, 318, 1558; pl. marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77.
Marchez-mene, s. pl. bordermen, borderers, 1237.
Marras, Marrasse. See Marasse.
Marters, s. pl. martyrs, 1066.
Martyre, v. kill, 560.
Mase, v. 3 s. makes, 960.
Masondewes, s. pl. hospitals, 3038.
Fr. maison-dieu, lit. house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv.
Maugree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of.
Maundement, s. commandment, order, 1537.

Mawgree. See Maugree.

Mawncelet. Read Mawntelet, s. mantling, or lambrequin, 3632. "Mantling, or Lambrequin:— a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer."—Boutell's Heraldry (3rd edit. 1864), p. 115. In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail.

Mayles, 2250, Mayleiz, 904, 1487, 1764, s. pl. chain or ringed armour.
Mayne, s. might, power, 4326.
Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, adj. main.
Maynoyrede, p.p. worked, 2507.
Mayster. See Maister.

Maysterfulle, adj. victorious, 3413.

Mede, s. meed, reward, 666, 1068.
Mede, s. mead, 1290, 2506.
Medille, s. middle, waist, 2205, 4168.
Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, s. world.
Medille warde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1988, s. centre of an army.

Mekille, Mekylle, adj. great, 1236; adv. much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382.

Mele, v. speak, talk, 990; 3 s. meles, 382, 670, 1781; pl. mellys, 3652; imp. 2 pl. melys, 2871.

Melione, s. million, 3144.

Melle, v. mix, join, meddle, deal with, 935; pl. mellis, 2904.

Melles, v. 3 s. hammers, smites, 2950. See Malle.

Mellyd, adj. (t) made like a mall or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210.

Mellys, Melys. See Mele.
Mendement, s. amendment, 989, 1236.
Mendynantez, s. pl. (?i) mendicants, beggars, 667.
Mene, v. speak, tell, 3556; speak of, mention, 2560; 3 s. menys, talks, 3478, 3653.
Menede, v. pret. meant, 891.
Mengene, v. pl. mingle, join, 4173; p.p. mengede, 3632.
Menske, s. honour, 126, 399, 433.
Menskes, v. 3 s. honours, 1303, 2871.
Mereswyne, s. dolphin, 1091.
Merke, v. proceed, 351, 427, 4320; assign, 1068; 3 s. merkes, cuts, 2206; pl. merkene, 4168; p.p. merked, formed, made, 1304, merkyde, 952.
Merkes, s. pl. bounds, 461, 1147.
Merred, 1238, 3555, Merride, 3322, p.p. marred.
Meruaile, Meruayle, s. marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906.
Muerailles, v. 3 s. marvels, 1314.
Muerailous, 260, Mueraylous, 428, Muerayllous, 2287, Muerelous, 236, adj. marvellous, wonderful; superl. muerelyousteste, 129.
Mery, adj. merry, cheerful, 260; comp. meriere, 3175; superl. meryeste, 3239.
Messes, s. pl. masses, 4018, 4339.
Mett, v. pret. dreamed, 3223.
Mette, 2491, s. meat, food; pl. metes, 75, metez, 1298.
Mette, v. meet, 434; pret. mett, 1175, 3841.
Mette-fulle, adj. measure-full, in good measure, 2343.

Mette while, s. measured time, or scanty time, 3903. A.S. môte, moderate, little.
Misdo, v. ill-use, wrong, 126.
Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, adj. more.
Mobles, s. pl. movable goods, 666.
Mode, s. mind, 3222, 3382, 3454.
Modyr, Modyre, s. mother, 2, 983, 1211.
Mofes, v. 3 s. moves, 3323.
Molde, s. mould, earth, 129, 952, 975.
Mone, v. must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820.
Monee, s. money, 2343.
Monethe, s. month, 318.
Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntayngnes, 4259, s. pl. mountains.
Monte, s. mountain, 938, 1069; pl. montez, 874, 1175, mowutes, 3535, 3556.
Mony, adj. many, 3623, 3671.
Moo. See Mo.
More, adj. greater, 1018.
Morne, s. morning, morrow, 1223.
Morne-while, s. morning time, 2001, 3223.
Morthires, v. 2 s. murderest, 1315; pl. moutherys, 4259; p.p. morthired, 976.
Morwene, s. morning, 3476.
Moste, v. must, 250, 263, 449; impers. v. 2491.
Moste, adj. greatest, 3322, 4221.
Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, v. must, may.
Mournande, i. p. mourning, 4333.
Mourtherys. See Morthires.
Mowe, v. subj. sg. be able, may, 3812.
Moyllez, s. pl. mules, 2287.
Muskadelle, s. a kind of wine, 230.

Myche, adj. great, 1166, 1214, 2033; adv. much, greatly, 1068.
Myde, adj. mid, 3841.
Myddes, 1293, Myddys, 2176, s. midst.

Mylde, adj. mild, 1211.
Mynde, s. memory, 1221.
Mynsters, s. pl. monasteries, 3038.

Myrthez, s. pi. mirths, 1532.

Mysche, s. trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437.

Myse-bide, v. offer injury, 3083.
Mysese, s. trouble, grief; and hence, those who are in trouble, 667.

Myshappene, v. meet with misfortune, 3454.

Myskaries, v. 3 s. comes to grief, 2872; pp. mysckaryede, 1778, mysckaryede, 1237.

Mysse, s. wrong, injury, 1315, 3057.

Myste, s. mist, 2001.

Myx, s. vile wretch; lit. dung, 989. A.S. meox, dung, muck. "Ne myhte þe mixes þo wurse don, Bute a-mong þeoues on rode an-hon." Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 265, back.

Na, adj. no, 160, 310, 1644.
Nakyne, adj. of no kind, 2350.
Nane, adj. no, 213, 565; pron. none, 657, 2613.
Nauylle, s. navel, 979.

Naye, s. a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283. Compare Nei$ in William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, l. 83.

Ne, adv. not, 230, 1117; conj. nor, 10, 161.
Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, s. pl. business.

Nedlyle, s. needle (of a compass), 753.

Neghe, v. draw nigh, approach, 2133.

Neghe, adv. closely, exactly, 2658.
Neke-bone, s. neckbone, 2771.

Nere, adv. nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135.

Nese, s. nose, 2248.
Neuewe, s. nephew, 689.

Neu3ere, s. new-year, 78.

Newyers daye, s. new-year's day, 90.

Nextte, adj. nearest, 2422.

Neynesome, nine in all, 523. See Sum in Richthofen's Altfrisches Wörterbuc.

Nobille, Nobylle, adj. noble, 16, 18, 68; superl. nobileste, 3439, 3935.

Nobilly, adv. nobly, 1815.

Noblay, s. splendour, 76, 2433.

Noghte, pron. naught, 1191; adv. not, 135, 419, 1174.

Nokyne, adj. of no kind, 430.

Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, p.p. numbered.

Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, 2942, 3433, Nowmer, 884, s. number; pl. nom bers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935.


Nommers. See Nombyre.

None, s. the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 p.m.), 78.

Nonis, 3297, Nonys, 1927, s. nonce; for the nonce, for the occasion.

Nonkyns, adj. of no kind, 2363.

Nonne, adj. no, 3365.

Nonnes, s. pl. nuns, 3539.

Noo, adj. no, 4149.
Not, v. 1 s. know not, 977.
Notez, v. pl. make use of, 1815. A.S. notian.
Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Nowthire, 161, 429, conj. neither.
Notte, s. use; hence, business, 1816. A.S. notu.
Nowene, 1806; thi nowene = thine own.
Nowmbirs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre, Nowmer. See Nowber.
Nowmerde. See Nother.
Noyes, v. 3 s. harms, grieves, 1816, 2248.
Nurree, s. nursling, 689.
Nyghtgale, s. nightingale, 929.
Nynne = nine, 3439
O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907, prep. on, in.
O, prep. of, from, 3906.
Occedente, s. occident, west, 2360.
Occyane, s. ocean, 31.
Oches, v. 3 s. hacks, breaks, 2565; pl. ochene, 3675; pret. ochede, 4245. "Ocher, ocher, ébrécher, cutailler, briser." Burguy.
Occyane, s. ocean, 31.
Oches, v. 3 s. hacks, breaks, 2565; pl. ochene, 3675; pret. ochede, 4245. "Ocher, ocher, ébrécher, cutailler, briser." Burguy.
Occyane, s. ocean, 31.
Oches, v. 3 s. hacks, breaks, 2565; pl. ochene, 3675; pret. ochede, 4245. "Ocher, ocher, ébrécher, cutailler, briser." Burguy.
Ocupyes, v. 3 s. holds, occupies, 1663, 2360.
Of = from, 2540.
Oghte, pron. aught, 1014, 1269, 2802. 
Okene, adj. oaken, 2722.
Olawe, adv. below, down, 1517.
Olyfaunte, s. elephant, 2339; pl. olyfauntez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288.
Olyfe, adv. of life, from life, 802, 1139; bringe olyfe = kill.
One = on, prep. 74, 116, 753.
One, adv. alone, only, 826, 937, 2519, 2592. A.S. on. Myne one, by myself, 3230; by myne one, by myself, 704; beoure one, by our-selves, 1345; thynne one, thyself, 466; with hymne one, with him-self, 597; of hymne one, of himself, 1793; be thame one, by them-selves, 3195.
Ones, 135, 179; Onez, 1109, 1756, adv. once.
One-seeande, i. p. looking on, 525.
Onone, adv. anon, quickly, soon, 571, 1178, 1231.
Ony, adj. any, 2519, 3489, 4215.
Oo. See O.
Opyne, adj. open, 2147.
Or, prep. ere, before, 1269, 1788; conj. ere, before, 374, 529, 1680.
Orfraeez, 902, Orfrayes, 2142, s. gold embroidered work, or fringe of gold. "Orfrais, . . . étoune brochée d'or, broderie en or, fringe d'or." Burguy.
Orrible, adj. horrible, 1240.
Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904, s. orient.
Osay, s. a kind of drink, 202.
Oslante, adv. aslant, 2254, 3923.
Ostage, s. pl. hostages, 3187, 3208.
Ostayande, i. p. warring, or leading an army, 3502. "Ostoier, osteier, osteer, faire la guerre, guer-royer, mener ost, attaquer son ennemi." Burguy.
Oste, s. host, 1624; pl. ostes, 1240, ostez, 2387.
Other-while, adv. at another time, 1145.
Othire, adj. other, 3973; pron. pl. others, 3932.
Ouer-fallene, p.p. fallen upon, 1154.
Ouer-gylte, p.p. gilded over, 207.

Ouer-hande, s. upper hand, mastery, 4300.

Ouerkerste, v. pret. overthrew, 3932.

Ouerlynge, s. upper, 207.

Ouer-lyande, s. upper hand, mastery, 4300.

Ouerkeste, v. pret. overthrow, 3932.

Ouerlynge, s. superior, lord, 289, 520, 710.

Ouer-rane, v. pret. overthrow, 3932.

Ouer-reche, v. reach over, afford, 1508; pi. ouerrechez, reach over, 921.


Ouersette, p.p. overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136.

Ouer-swyngene, v. pi. overthrow, overturn, 1466.

Owerwhelme, v. overturn, 3261.

Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, adj. wavy. Her. ondee.

"Hire ownded here, that sonnyssh was of hewe,
She rente ... ."

Chaucer, Troylus & Cryseyde, bk. iv. stanza cii.

Ovyre-fallys, v. pi. fall over, 3677.

Ower, prep. over, 747.

Ownde. See Oundyde.

Owte-iles, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, s. pl. foreign islands.

Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owte-londys, 3697, s. pl. foreign countries.

Owte-mowntes, s. pl. far off mountains, 3909.

Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2239, adv. outside, above.

Owther, 110, 2413, Owthire, 964, conj. either.

Owtrayve, v. finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328; 3 s. owtrayves, 1664; p.p. owterayde, 1952, owtrayde, 2617, owtrayde, 2840.

Ouergytle, p.p. gilded over, 207.

Pacles, 503, Palesse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, s. palace; pl. palaisez, 1287.

Palfray, s. 3143.

Palle, s. a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2478, 3142.

Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, p.p. paled (Her.).

Pape, s. pope, 229, 2327.

Pare, v. (?!) 4047.

Parlement, s. parliament, 146.

Party, s. part, 212; pl. partyes, parts, countries, 2596.

Pas, s. pace, 3496.

Passande, i. p. passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4184.

Pastorelles, s. pl. herdmen, 3120.

Patriarkes, s. pl. 3807.

Paume, s. palm, 776.

Paunsone, s. (?) piece of armour covering the paunch, 3458. "Pancire, panchire, la partie de l'armure qui couvre la panse ou le ventre." Burguy.

Pauys, 3460, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage.

Pauysers, s. pl. men who bore the pavis, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004.

Pavelyouns, 2624, Pauyllyons, 2478, s. pl. tents.

Pawnee, s. piece of armour for the belly, 2075.

Pawnche, s. paunch, 2076.

Paye, v. satisfy, please, 4049; 3 s. payes, 2646; p.p. payede, 230.

Payganys, s. pl. pagans, 4046.

Payne, s. penalty, 2329; pl. paynez, 1546, 1632.

Paynyme, s. pagan, 1377; pl. paynymes, 2835, paynymmez, 1544.
Payses, v. pl. weight, load, 3037; pret. paysede, overloaded, weighed down, 3042.
Payvese, s. pl. pavises, 3625.
Pecez, s. pl. pieces, 1825.
Pechelyne, s. (?) 1341.
Pekille, s. a kind of sauce made of dripping, wine, mustard, and onions, 1027. See the recipe for Pykulle in the Liber Cure Cocorum, ed. Morris, p. 31.
Peli, v. pret. thrust, drove (?), 3042.
Pelours. See Pylours.
Pendes, v. 3 s. belongs, 1612; pi. 2624.
Penowne, s. pennon, flag, 2917; pl. penouns, 2460.
Penselle, s. small pennon, streamer, 2076, 2411; pi. penselles, 2460, pensels, 1289.
Persayfes, v. 3 s. perceives, 4224; pret. persayfede, 1631, persayuede, 2811.
Persewes, v. 3 s. pursues, 2155; pret. persewe, 1476, persue, 1377.
Perly, adv. openly, 2917.
Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris, 1637, s. pl. peers.
Perfournede, p.p. performed, 672.
Perrie, 4184, Perrye, 2460, 3461, s. precious stones, jewelry.
Persayfes, v. 3 s. perceives, 4224; pret. persayfede, 1631, persayuede, 2811.
Persewes, v. 3 s. pursues, 2155; pret. persewe, 1476, persue, 1377.
Perly, adv. openly, 2917.
Peres, 2411, Pesse, 1542, s. peace.
Pesane, s. (?) 3458.
Petje, s. pity, 2812, 3043.
Peyne. See Payne.
Pighte, Pyghte, p.p. pitched, 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c.), 212, 3354, 3460; adorned (?), 3364.
Pilgram, s. pilgrim, 3475.
Pilgreimage, s. 3496.
Pillione hatt, s. 3460. A kind of hat, at one time worn only by doctors in theology, but afterwards more generally. See Pecock's Repressor, ed. Babington, pp. 88, 89, and Glossary.
Pilouur, s. robber, 2533.
Plas, s. place, 4013.
Plasche, s. marshy place, 2798.
Platers, s. pl. dishes, 182.
Platez, s. pl. plates, 2075.
Plattes, s. pl. purple cloths, 2478. "Platta, purpura, vel pannus purpurei coloris." Ducange. Or more probably plattes is a pl. v. meaning, strike, beat. A.S. plettiian.
Playne, adj. level, smooth, 1290.
Playsterede, adj. plastered, 3042.
Plenerly, adv. fully, 2608, 3498.
Plentuous, adj. abundant, 1028.
Plesande, i. p. pleasing, pleasant, 11, 4049.
Plesaunce, s. delight, enjoyment, 3140.
Poueralle, s. poor folk, 3120.
Pouere, adj. poor, 3540.
Pouerete, s. poverty, 1545.
Pourpour, s. purple, 1375.
Pouere, s. forces, 1635, 1925, 2155.
Poyne, v. work upon, toil at, 2624.
Poyntez, s. pl. points, 767.
Praye, s. prey, booty, 3003, 3010.
Prekande, Prekes, Prekys, Prekkande, &c. See Prick.
Preker, Prekkers. See Prikker.
Presant, adj. present, 1257.
Presante, s. present, 1021.
Prese, v. press, 1583; 3 s. presez, 1374; pret. presede, 2199.
Presone, s. prison.
Presonere, s. prisoner, 2536; pl. presoners, 1583, 1636.
Presse, s. crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522.
Preue, adj. privy, secret, 2005.
Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Preualye, 1609, adv. privily, secretly.
Pryce, s. See Price.
Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, s. praise, prize.
Prykkes, Prykkyde. See Prike.
Pryme, s. the first hour of the day, 95, 4105.
Prys, Pryse, s. See Pryce.
Prys, Pryse, Prysse, Prysse. See Price.
Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, s.
Purchase, v. gain, acquire, obtain, 3497.
Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, s.
Purpre, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purpure, 1288, Pourpour, 1375, s. purple.
Put, v. 2535; put of = ward off.
Pygges, s. pl. pigs, 183.
Pyghte. See Pighte.
Pyke, s. pike, staff, 3475; pl. pykes, points, claws, 777.
Pyke, r. pick; 2 s. pykes, 2534; pyke vp, 1636.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 183

Pylotes, s. pl. pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037.
Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, s. pl. (? archers, or men who worked the engines.
Pyment, s. a kind of drink, 1028.
Pyne, s. suffering, 3043.
Pyne, v. pin, 4047.
Pypez, s. pl. pipes, fifes, 2030.
Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, s. health, prosperity.
Quarterde, p.p. quartered, 1736.
Quod, v. pret. quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559.
Quytte, v. requite, 1788.
Qwarelles, s. pi. bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103.
Qwaiters, s. pi. 3389.
Qwaste, p.p. quashed, crushed, 3389.
Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, pron what.
Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, adj. alive.
Qwene, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 45, Qwhene, 407, adv. when.
Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwerte. See Quarte.
Qwhene, 3998, s. queen.
Qwhenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwenne, 48, Qwenne, 407, adv. when.
Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 45, Qwhene, 407, adv. when.
Qwenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwene. See Quarte.
Qwenne. See Qwen.
Qwhenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwhenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 45, Qwhene, 407, adv. when.
Qwenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwenne, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 45, Qwhene, 407, adv. when.
Qwenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 45, Qwhene, 407, adv. when.
Qwenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.
Qwenne, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 45, Qwhene, 407, adv. when.
Qwenne, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, s. queen.

See the preface to Hampole’s Pricke of Conscience, ed. Morris, pp. xxv and xxvi.

Raas, v. tear, pluck away, 362; pret. rasede, tore, 2984.
Racches, s. pl. hounds, 3999.
Rade, adj. frightened, 1995, 2881.
Rade, s. fear, dread, 3896.
Rade. See Ryde.
Radly, adv. quickly, 1529, 3815. A.S. hrædlice.
Radnesse, s. fear, dread, terror, 120, 310.
Raghte. See Reche.
Raike, 1525, Rayke, 2985, s. course, path.
Raiissede, p.p. raised, 2057.
Rane. See Ryne.
Ranez, s. pl. thickets, brushwood, 923. See Rone in Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ed. Morris, l. 1466.
Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2138, adj. rank, strong.
Rankour, s. 1666.
Raply, adv. swiftly, 1763.
Rappyd, v. pret. rapped, smote, 785.
Rarede, v. pret. roared, 784, 1124.
Rasches, v. pl. dash, 2107.
Rasede. See Raas.
Raskaille, s. rabble, 2881.
Rathe, adj. swift, quick, 2550.
Rathe, adv. quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1668, 2022.
Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, adv. quickly.
Raughte. See Reche.
Rausnske, v. search, 4304; 3 s. ransakes, 3939; pl. ransakes, 1884; imp. 2 pl. ransakes.
Raunsone, s. ransom, 1528.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawnsone, 3275, v. ransom, levy ransom upon; pret. raunsounding, 293, 329; p.p. raunsound, 100, rawnsone, 2667.

Rauyschett, v. pret. ravished, 294.

Rawe, s. row; on rawe — in a row, in order, one after the other, 238, 633, 1292.

Rawghte. See Reche.

Rawmpyde, v. pret. ramped, 794.

Rawndoune, s. swiftness, violence, impetuosity, 2985. See Raudon in Roquefort.

Rawnsakes. See Raunsake.

Rawnsone. See Raunsone.

Rayke, v. proceed, go; s. raykes, 1762, rayke, 889, 1057; pret. raykede, 237; i. p. raykande, 3469.

Rayke, s. See Raike.


Raymede, p.p. (?) 100. Halliwell has, "Rame. To rob, or plunder."

Raythely. See Rathily.

Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411, Rialle, 1993, Rvalle, 53, 74, 2138, Ryalle, 17, adj. royal, kingly, noble; superl. realeste, 175, 1410.

Realltee, s. royalty, 155, 228, 423; pl. ryalltes, 3214, ryallitez 1665, royaltiez, 4005.

Rebanes, s. pl. ribbons, 3255.

Rebawde, s. ribald, rascal, vagabond, 1333; pl. rebawdez, 1416, 1705.

Rebawdous, adj. ribald, 456.

Rebelle, adj. rebellious, 2040.


Reche, v. reach, stretch forth the hand in giving or receiving; hence, hand over, give, take, draw, &c, 3 s. reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792; pret. raghte, 2760, raughte, 1527, 1884, 3352, rawghte, 3456, rechede, 1090, 3550, 4218; p.p. raghte, 2660, rechide, 1043.

Rech, s. (?) richness, 3263.

Reches, s. riches, wealth, 2607, 3571.

Reche, adj. richest, 155.

Reconsaillez, v. 3 s. reconcile, 3130.

Recreant, adj. recreant, 2334.

Red, 2932. See Rede, v.

Reddour, s. fear, dread, 109, 485, 1418. Su. Goth. reedde, fear.

Reddour, s. rigour, 1456. O. Fr. redour, redor, rigour, severity.


Rede, 995, 2144, Reedde, 3457, Reede, 795, 1526, adj. red.

Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363, Redily, 1207, 1526, adv. readily, quickly.

Reden. See Ryde.

Redy, v. make ready, prepare, 4137; pl. redyes, 1427.

Redyne. See Ryde.

Reedde. See Rede.


Regale, s. regalia, 4207.

Regestre, s. register, 113.

Reghte, adv. right, 1057, 1668, just, 1301.

Reghttes, v. 3 s. rights, puts to rights, 3815; pl. reghttez, 1454, ryghttene, 3618.

Regne, 398, Regonne, 4005, Ryngne, 3214, v. reign; s. regnes, 310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266; pl. regnez, 865; pret. regnede, 293, 3273, regnede, 3272, regned, 175, ryngned, 228; i. p. regnuande, 2665.
Rehersene, v. relate, tell, say, 3206; pret. rehersede, 1666.
Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, v. 3 s. cheers; pret. rehetede, 221.
O.Fr. rehaiter.
Reke, s. smoke, 1041.
Rekeneste, adj. (?) quickest, readiest, 4081. A.S. recene, soon, quickly.
Rekenyng, Rekkynynge, 1678, s. reckoning, account.
Rekke, v. reck, care, 995, 2040; pret. roughte, cared for, 3275.
Rekkene, v. reckon, 1275, 2334.
Reklesse, adj. *reckless, careless, 922, 1670.
Relayes, v. pi. relax, slacken, 1529.
Releuis, v. pi. rally, 2278; pret. releuyde, 2234; p.p. relevende, 1207.
Relikkes, s. relics, 4207.
Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, v. pl. rally; pret. relyede, 1391.
Relys, v. 3 s. reels, 2794.
Remenaunt, s. remnant, remainder, 1553.
Remmes. See Rewme.
Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, v. 3 s. shouts, cries out; pret. remyd, 3894.
Remowes, v. 3 s. removes, 1761.
Renayede, adj. renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892.
Rengnede, Rengnez. See Regne.
Renke, s. man, 1057; pl. renkes, 1410, renkkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, renkkez, 2135.
Rennene, v. pl. run, 200.
Rente, s. rent, tribute, 465; pl. rentez, 103, 995, renttez, 1509, 1667.
Rependez, v. pl. hang back, 2107.
Repent, v. pret. repented, 3894; repent, impers. v. 1392.
Requit, p.p. paid, 1680.
Rereage, s. arrears, 1680.
Rerebrace, s. 2566. "From the French arriere-bras. That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow. In the reign of Edward II. only one plate at first protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail; but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps." Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.
Rererys, v. 3 s. rears, 4249; p.p. rereryde, 4280.
Rerewarde, s. rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762.
Resaywe, v. receive, 3587.
Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Resowe, 1953, Rescows, 4137, s. rescue, deliverance.
Resonabilye, adv. reasonably, 1508.
Resone, 2041, Resonue, 174, 1668, s. reason, account.
Restreynde, p.p. restrained, 2041.
Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, s. pl. retainers, followers.
Retournes, v. pl. turn back, 1395.
Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuere, 424, Ryuere, 1292, s. river.
Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, v. hunt by a river. "Rivière, rivier, chasser en rivière." Burguy under Rive.
Reuelle, s. 1667.
Reuengyde, p.p. avenged, 1204.
Reurerssede, v. pret. turned down, 2070; p.p. reuersside, turned up, trimmed, 3255.
Reuertede, v. pret. turned over, 2918.
Rewdly. See Ruydly.
Re we, v. have pity, 866; cause regret, 1678; 3 s. rewees, 3272.
Rewede. See Refe.
Rewfulle, adj. rueful, pitiful, sad, 1049.
Rewfully, adv. ruefully, sadly, 1523.
Rewghe. See Rewthe.
Rewhelles, 1672, Rewlys, 509, v. 3 s. rules, governs; pl. reweles, 1455, rewlys, 726; p.p. rewyde, 52.
Rewme, s. realm, 1207; pl. rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49.
Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, s. pity, compassion, sorrow; rewthe werkes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894.
Reynede. See Regne.
Reyure. See Reuare.
Rialle. See Reale.
Riatours, s. pl. ravagers, 2034.
Richely, adv. 173.
Richeste, adj. 147.
Rigge, s. back, 800. A.S. hrycg.
Rightene, v. pl. put right, 1525.
Rightewissly, adv. righteously, 1554.
Rightwis, adj. righteous, 3989.
Riotes. See Ryot.
Riotous. See Ryotous.
Rittez, 2138, Rittis, 3753, v. pl. break, tear.
Roche, s. rock, 1146, 3601.
Rochelle, s. a kind of wine, 203.
Rode. See Ryde.
Rode, s. rood, cross, 3217, 3559. A.S. rōd.
Rog, s. (?l crowd, 3272. See roge in Íhre.
Roggede, v. pret. shook, 784.
Rolleded, p.p. enrolled, 2641.
Romawns, s. pl. romances, 3200.
Romede, v. pret. roared, 784.
Romyez, v. 3 s. roars, 888; pret. romyede, 1124.
Rongene. See Rynge.
Ronnene. See Ryne.
Roo, s. rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304. A.S. row.
Roo, s. wheel, 3374. Fr. roue, Lat. rota.
Roo, s. roe, 922, 4000. A.S. rā.
Roode. See Ryde.
Roselde, 2880, Roselde, 2793, adj. (?) brandished, shaken. Cf. Sw. ruskla, to shake; E. rustle.
Rosers, s. pl. rosetrees, 923.
Rosse, s. rose, 3457.
Rosselde. See Roselde.
Rossete, adj. russet, 237.
Rostez, s. pl. roasts, 1049.
Roughte. See Rekke.
Roungene. See Rynge.
Rowelle, s. wheel, 3262. “Roele, rowele, roelle, roue, petite roue, rond, cercle; de rotula.” Burguy.
Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, adj. roomy, spacious.
Rowte, v. sleep; lit. snore, 108.
Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, s. company, troop.
Rowtte, s. road, way, 379.
Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200, 3273, s. king. Fr. roi, Lat. rex.
Royaltez. See Realte.
Rungene. See Rynge.
Rusche, v. rush, fall; cast, hurl, 1339, thrust, 2850; 3 s. rusches, falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes, 392, ruysches, 2953; pl. ruschis, 2550, ruyschis, hurl, dash, 2913; pret. ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte, 120.
Ruscleded, adj. (?) ruckled, wrinkled, 1096. Cf. ruck in Wedgwood.
Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, adj. rude.
Ryalltez. See Realte.
Ryally, adv. royally, 1472, 3613.
Ryche, adj. 108, 833.
Rydde, adj. fierce, 4117. See Rid in Jamieson.
Ryde, v. ride, 1876; 3 s. ryddis, 3540; pl. ryddes, 2849, rydene, 2809; pret. rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; pret. pl. redene, 485; p.p. redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.
Ryalle. See Reale.
Ryalltez. See Realte.
Ryde, adv. royally, 1472, 3613.
Rybezz, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, s. pl. ribs.
Rych, adj. 108, 833.
Rydde, adj. fierce, 4117. See Rid in Jamieson.
Ryd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, adj. rude.
Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche, 1877, Ruydel, 2810, adv. rudely.
Ruyschis, Ruysschis. See Rusche.
Ryche, adj. 108, 833.
Rydde, adj. fierce, 4117. See Rid in Jamieson.
Ryde, v. ride, 1876; 3 s. ryddis, 3540; pl. ryddes, 2849, rydene, 2809; pret. rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; pret. pl. redene, 485; p.p. redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.
Ryalle. See Reale.
Ryalltez. See Realte.
Ryde, adv. royally, 1472, 3613.
Rybezz, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, s. pl. ribs.
Rych, adj. 108, 833.
Rydde, adj. fierce, 4117. See Rid in Jamieson.
Ryde, v. ride, 1876; 3 s. ryddis, 3540; pl. ryddes, 2849, rydene, 2809; pret. rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; pret. pl. redene, 485; p.p. redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.
Ryalle. See Reale.
Ryf, 362, Rywe, 2439, v. rive, rend, split, pierce; 3 s. ryfes, 794, 1474, ryvys, 3824; pl. ryffes, 2913.
Ryghte, adv. straight, 889.
Ryghttene. See Reghttes.
Ryghttetz, 894, 1439, Ryghtys, 610, s. pl.
Ryghtwise, adj. righteous, 866.
Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, s. pl. trees.

Ryne, v. run, 109, 3990; 3 s. rynnez, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540; pret. rane, 1526, 2881, rynnyde, 2965, rynnyd, 920; pret. pl. rynned, 922; i. p. rynnde, 392, 795.


Rynge, Ryngned, Ryngnes. See Regne.
Rynsche, adj. either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203. See Runisch in Glossary to Alliterative Poems.

Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, s. pl. trees.

Ryne, v. run, 109, 3990; 3 s. rynnez, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540; pret. rane, 1526, 2881, rynnyde, 2965, rynnyd, 920; pret. pl. rynned, 922; i. p. rynnde, 392, 795.


Rynge, Ryngned, Ryngnes. See Regne.
Rynsche, adj. either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203. See Runisch in Glossary to Alliterative Poems.

Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341, Ryotte, 923, 1883, v. ravege; (with the reflexive pronoun) run riot; 3 s. ryottez, 619, riotes, 3172.

Ryotous, 379, 432, Riotous, 363, adj.

Ryotte, s. uncontrolled license, riot, 294, 412; pl. riotes, 388, ryotes, 3893.

Rype, v. search, 1877; 3 s. rypes, 3940.

Rysises, v. 3 s. rises, 3660.

Ryste, Rysted, &c. See Riste.

Ryuses, s. pl. (?) 1764.

Ryvaye. See Reuaye.

Ryve (= aryve), v. land, 3896.

Ryvys, Rywe. See Ryfe.

Sa, adv. so, 3796, 3870.

Sabylle, 771, Sable, 2027, s. sable, black.


Sade, adj. sad, 3948; comp. sadare, 3289.

Sadilles, 1801, Sadyllles, 1855, s. pl. saddles.

Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Sadelly, 1458, adv.
Safe, v. save, 3051.
Sagge, adj. sage, wise, 814.
Saghetylle, v. become reconciled, 330.
Saise, v. 3 s. says, 1162; imp. 2 pl. saise, 1267.
Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3390, adj. innocent.
Saille, s. hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.
Salve, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Sale, s. hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.
Salle, 1364.
Sagge, adj. sage, wise, 814.
Saghetylle, v. become reconciled, 330.
Saise, v. says, 1162; imp. 2 pi. saise, 1267.
Sakeles, 3986, 3992, adj. innocent.
Salle, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Sale, s. hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.
Salle, 1364. Read Sable.
Salle, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, s. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, s. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Saille, v. shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
Schelde, v. shield, 3.

Scheldyde, adj. having shields, 1856.

Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltron, 1856, Scheltrone, 1992, s. troop, band; pl. schiltrounis, 1765, schiltrouns, 1813, 2210. The older form is schiltrun. A.S. scylf, shield, truana, troop.

Schenchipe, s. disgrace, 4299.

Schende, v. ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435.

Schene. See Scheene.

Schep, s. sheep, 2922.

Schere, v. shear, cut, 2546; 3 s. scherys, 3600; pret. schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545.

Scherenkene. See Schrenkys.

Schethede, p.p. sheathed, 3852.

Schifte, Schiftys. See Skyfte.

Schiede. See Schelde.

Schiltrone, Schiltronis. See Scheltrone.

Schippemene, s. pl. shipmen, sailors, 1212.

Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, adj. bright.

Schirreuses, s. pl. sheriffs, 725.

Scho, pron. she, 853, 860.

Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodirde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, v. pret. shuddered, shook, quivered.

Schokke, v. shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114; 3 s. schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235; pl. schokkes, 1759.

Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, v. should.

Schone, s. pl. shoes, 3471.

Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, v. shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way; 3 s. schownnes, 3599.

Schonheit, Schontez. See Schountes.

Schore, s. score, 2344, 3577.

Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325.

Schotande. See Schotte.

Schotene, v. pl. shut, 749.

Schotte, v. shoot, 1992; pl. schottes, 2426; pret. schotte, 1765; i. p. schotande, 1766.

Schotte, s. shot, shooting, 2105, 2428; pl. schotys, 3627.

Schotte-mene, s. pl. shooters, 2467.

Schouelle-fotede, adj. shovel-footed, 1098.

Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, v. pret. pl. shaved.

Schoulders, s. pl. shoulders, 2546.

Schoune. See Schone.

Schountes, 3816, Schownttes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, v. 3 s. turns aside, shrinks away, hesitates, delays; pl. schontez, 1759; pret. schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736; imp. 2 s. schunte, 1324.

Schoupe. See Schape.

Schove, v. shove, thrust, 3847.

Schowande, i. p. (l) shuffling, 1099.

Schownnes. See Schone.

Schownttes. See Schountes.

Schragges, s. pl. jagged ends, 3473.

Schrede, v. pret. cut, 2211, 4167; p.p. schrede, 2688.

Schrede, 3991, Schreede, 767, p.p. clothed.

Schredez, 905, Schredys, 3473, s. pl. shreds.

Schrenkys, v. 3 s. shrinks, 4234; pl. scherenkene, 2105;
sehrenkede, wrunkled, 2211; i. p. sehrenkande, wrinkling, 1857.

Schreewe, s. wicked person, 2779.

Schriste, s. shrift, confession, 2588.

Schrinking, 1. p. shrinking, wrinkling, 767.

Schrowde, s. dress, 3628. A.S. scríd, garment.

Schryfte, v. confess, 3400.

Schryyme, s. deformed creature, monster (applied to a dragon), 767.

Schrynede, p.p. shrined, 3991.

Schulde, s. should, 3183, 3791.

Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldys, 3294, Schoulders, 2546, s. pl. shoulders.

Schunte, Schuntes. See Schontes.

Schwede = schewed, showed, 4233.

Schyte. See Skyfte.

Schylde. See Schelde.

Schynbawde, s. 3846, seems to mean the greave or shin-plate; but the form of the word leads one to think that it originally meant shin-belt, probably a piece of chain-armour or other defence bound round the leg. See Glossary to Syr Gawayne, ed. Madden. Compare Eng. baldrick and Lat. baltas.

"He, and his gambesoins, glomede als gledys,
With graynes of rubyes, that graythed were gaye
And his schene schynbawdes, scharpe for to schrede."

The Awntyrs of Arthure, ed. Madden, stanza xxxi.

Schyre. See Schire.

Scoulders, 766. Read Schoulders.

Scrippe, s. 3474.

Seche, Sechis. See Seke.

See, s. seat, 3291, 3350.

See, s. sea, 490, 1402.

Seegge, s. seat, proper place, 2478.

Seegge. See Segge.

Seese, v. pl. see, 1405.

Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574, s. man; pl. seggez, 1420, 1422. A.S. segg.

Segge, 355, s. siege.

Seggede, v. pret. besieged, 3011.

Segnourry, s. lordship, 528.

Sekadrisses, s. pl. 2283. There is surely some mistake here; perhaps we ought to read cokadrilles = crocodiles (compare Span. cocolrillo) or cokatrices, which may have the same meaning, since Roquefort gives, "Cocatrice, cocaúris: Crocodile." Either suits the alliteration, gives some sense, and might by a slight mistake of the scribe be turned into sekadrisses, which gives no sense at all. Crocodiles in a Roman camp are not more out of place than camels and elephants are when crossing the Alps with coffins on their backs! See p. 60.

Seke, adj. sick, 1574.

Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche, 3333, v. seek, make for, go (towards); 2 s. sechis, 3507; pret. soghte, 1041, soughte, 720, 2170; inf. sekene, 898; p.p. soghte, 1171.

Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313, Sekyre, 478, 551, adj. sure, safe, trusty; comp. sekerare, 3289; superl. sekereste, 1492.

Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499, Sekyryl, 439, 1420, adv. surely, certainly, safely.

Sekire, v. ensure, 2585, 3804.

Sektour, s. executor, 665.

Selcoute, 75, 1298, 3531, Selkouthe, 1948, adj. strange, rare.

Seldene, adv. seldom, 1163.

Sele, s. seal, 85.

Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8, Seluyn, 10, 34, self.

Selkouthe. See Selcoute.
Selkouthely, adv. strangely, 3252.

Selkylde, 3356. Perhaps miswritten for 'Serkylde,' encircled.

Seluene, Seluyne. See Selfene.

Semblant, s. show, splendour, 75, 410.

Semlyche, 3947, Semly, 410, 1949, adj. seemly, comely, goodly.

Semen, 1672, Semys, 1418, Semez, 133, 1162, Semys, 1418, impefs. v. seems; pret. semede, 123, semyde, 193. It is often used with the objective case of the personal pronouns: the semes = thou seemest, 1672; them semyde = they seemed, 193.

Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787, adv. in a comely manner, well.

Sen, 127, 142, Senes, 526, 952, adv. or conj. since.

Sendelle, s. fine linen, 2299.

Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471, Sengly, 3729, adv. singly, alone.

Sent, s. scent, 1040.

Sent, s. assent, consent, 1628, 2615, 3065.

Sepulture, s. burial, 4340.

Sere, adj. various, diverse, separate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195.

Serfede, 1068. See Serues.

Sergeaunt, s. servant, 632; pl. sergantes, 1173.

Serte, s. desert, 2926; pl. sertes, 513. Compare serve for deserve.

Sereuz, v. pl. serve, 1168.

Serues, v. pl. deserve, 1315; p.p. seruende, 2590, serfede, 1068.

Ses, v. 3 s. sees, 3941.

Sesez, v. 3 s. seizes, 1500.


Sessede, v. pret. ceased, 2132.

Sesyn, s. seizin, 3588.

Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, s. seat.

Seterdaye, s. Saturday, 1550, 3176.

Sethene. See Sythene.

Setille, s. settle, seat, 3270.

Seuende, adj. seventh, 488.

Seuenshore, seven score, 3788.

Seuelynghete, s. week, 153, 380, 3182.

Sewes, s. pl. stews, pottages, 192.

Sewe, v. follow, 2927; pret. sewede, 3288; i. p. sewande, 81.

Sex, adj. six, 354, 380; sex sum = six in all, 471.

Sexte, adj. sixth, 3316, 3416.

Sextene, adj. sixteen, 81, 105.

Sexti, Sexty, adj. sixty, 179, 210, 601.

Sexti-faulde, adj. sixtyfold, 2299.

Seyne, s. sign, 2055, 2870.

Seyne, p.p. seen, 3985.

Seyne, adv. afterwards, 188, 192, 282, 1591.

Seyngnour, 3313, Seyn^owre, 2419, s. lord; pi. seynowres, 1577.

Seynt, s. saint, 1169; pi. seynetz, 1163, 1168.

Sheltrone. See Scheltrone.

Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891, Sybbe, 681, adj. related, akin.

Siche. See Swylke.

Siluere, 3313, Silueryne, adj. made of silver, 185.

Silueryne, adj. made of silver, 185.

Singulere, adj. single, by himself, 172.

Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134, s. lord.
Sittande, i. p. becoming, suitable, 953, 1501.
Sittandly, adv. becomingly, 159.
Sittene, p.p. sat, 3291.
Skalopis, s. pl. scallop-shells, 3474.
Skape, v. escape, 1562.
Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, s. hurt, damage.
Skathelle, 1642, Scathyllle, 32, adj. hurtful.
Skathye, adj. hurtful, 1562.
Skayles, v. 3 s. scales, 3034.
Skayres, v. pl. scavenge, frighten, 2468.
Skewe, v. eschew, escape, 1562.
Skiftez. See Skyfte.
Skilfulle, adj. reasonable, right, 1561.
Skomfite, s. discomfit, 2335.
Skomfite, p.p. discomfited, 1644.
Skomfitoure, s. discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644.
Skomfyture, s. discomfiture, 1561.
Skorne, v. scorn, 1642; pret. skornede, 1840.
Skornefulle, adj. 1840.
Skostiferis, 3034, Skottefers, 2468, s. pl. shield-bearers. Compare Lat. scutiferi, squires.
Skouerours, s. explorers, scouts, 3118.
Skouker, adj. 3119.
Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, v. shift, dispose, manage; 3 s. skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32; pl. skyftes, 3117, schiffts, 725, schef-
Slowghe. See Sloughe.
Slydande, i. p. sliding, 2976.
Slyke, adj. such, 3719. See Swylke.
Slynges, v. 3 s. slings, throws, 3220, 3855.
Slytte, s. slit, 3853.
Slyttes, v. 3 s. slits, 2254, 2975.
Smyttes, Smyttez, 2564, 3853.
Smyttes, v. 3 s. smites.
Smythes, 2564, 3853.
Sodecly, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1980.
Soly, adj. softening, melting, 3983.
Sone, s. son, 1945.
Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, adv. soon.
Songene, v. pret. pl. sang, 745, 2674.
Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, s. sun.
Sononde, s. Sunday, 501, 2482.
Soo, adv. so, 1841.
Sope, s. sup, hasty meal, 1890.
Soppe, s. crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729.
Sore, s. disease, 932.
Sore, adv. sorely, 1173; comp. sorere, 1163.
Sorowe, s. 1138, 2224.
Sorte, s. troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575; pl. sortes, 606.
Sote, adj. true, 1686; for sothe, truly, 1087.
Sothe, s. truth, 3229.
Sotely, adv. truly, 172, 239, 319.
Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, s. sot.
Soueraygne, adj. 1167.
Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Souera^gne, 141, s. sovereign; pl. souera^ngez, 1960.
Soughte. See Seke.
Souppe. See Sowpe.
Sowdane, s. soldan, sultan, 590, 1295; pl. sowdanes, 593.
Sowdeours, s. pl. hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938.
Sowe, s. some warlike engine, 3033. See Sow in Jamieson.
Sowmes, s. pl. sums, 1627.
Sownde, adj. 1577.
Sowpe, 1298, Souppe, 3805, v. sup; 3 s. sowppes, 1025; pret. sowpped, 409; i. p. sowpande, 1044.
Sowper, s. supper, 1022.
Steride, Steris. *See* Stire.

Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Stirttez, 1932, Styrtze, 1152, *v.* 3 s. starts; *pl.* stirttes, 2692; *pret.* sterte, 916.

Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, adj. stern; superl. sterynneste, 3572.

Sterynly, adv. sternly, 745, 2130.

Sterys. *See* Stire.

Steu, s. voice, 2531, 4269.


Stire, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v.* stir, move; 3 s. sterys, 917; *pl.* steris, 2923, 3658; *pret.* steride, 1793; imp. 2 pl. stirrez, 1748.

Stirttes, Stirttez. *See* Stertez.

Stit-telys, *v.* pl. arrange, 3622.

Stodde, Stode. *See* Stondes.

Stokes, *s.* *pl.* (?) estocs, or stabbing swords, 1436.


Stokkes, *s.* *pl.* 3665.

Stonays, *v.* *pl.* stuns, hits stunning blows, 2118; *p.p.* stonyaede, 1933, 3873.

Stondes, 2090, Stonndys, 3623, *v.* *pl.* stand; *pret.* stode, 1489, 2923, stodde, 4133.

Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467, 4271, *v.* 3 s. becomes foolish, mad, dizzy, or stupid. "Estoutir, estoutoyer: Être fou, imprudent, avoir de la témérité, être insensé; stultescere." Roquefort. Burguy gives the forms "estoteier, estoutier, estouteier, estoutoyer, estotoier," but with the meaning "maltraiter."

Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488, Stowre, 2086, *s.* battle.

Stownde, *s.* time, 3974; *pl.* stowndys, 3888.

Stownntyng, *s.* stopping, delay, 491.

Stowre. *See* Stour.

Strake. *See* Stryke.

Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227, 1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes, 4067, *s.* *pl.* waters.

Strates, 561, Strayte, 3009, *s.* *pl.* straites, narrow places.

Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230, *adj.* strait, narrow.

Strebbe, *adv.* straight, 1792, 3101.

Strekes, Strekyne. *See* Stryke.

Strekez, *v.* 3 s. stretches, 1229, 2085.

Streme, *s.* stream, 755; *pl.* stremes, 1224.

Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte, 796, *s.* strength; strong place, 1230, 1435; *pl.* strenghes, forces, 1475, 2242, strenghez, 1827. strenghezthis, 3322.

Strenghely, *adv.* strongly, 4096.

Strette, *s.* street, road, 3467.

Streynez, *v.* 3 s. exerts, 917.

Strondes. *See* Strandez.

Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v.* destroy; *pl.* stroyene, 3127; *p.p.* stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205.

Stryke, *v.* strike, smite; 3 s. strykez, 1124, strykkes, 1480; *pl.* strykkys, 1411, streckes, 3101; *pret.* strake, 2080, 2129; *pret.* pl. strekynne, 755, 3659.

Studande, *i.* *p.* studying, 3467.

Stuffe, *v.* furnish, 1932; *pl.* stuffe, 2369; *pret.* stuffede, 3616.

Sturdely, *adv.* sturdily, 1104.

Stye, *s.* path, 3466.


Stynte, *v.* cease, 3127.

Styre. *See* Stire.
Styrtez. See Stertez.
Subarbe, s. suburbs, 4043; pl. subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466.
Subgettez. See Sugett.
Suerdds. See Swerde.
Sugett, 87, Suette, 3138, s. subject; pl. subgettez, 2314.
Suggourne, v. sojourn, 153, 354, 1335; s. suggeourns, 54, sug-
gournez, 624.
Sulayne, adj. alone, 2592.
Sulde, v. subj. pret. should, 72, 213, 214.
Sundyre, v. part, separate, 7.
Suppowelle, v. support, 2818.
Supprisede, 2616, Supprissede, 1845, Supprysede, 3797, Supprys-
sede, 1951, Supprysside, 1420, p.p. taken unawares, overtaken, sur-
prised.
Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, s. surcoat.
Surepel, s. cover, 3317.
Surgyne, s. surgeon, 4311.
Surravns, s. assurance, security, 3181.
Surs, s. rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468.
Suteleste, adj. subtlest, 808.
Suyche. See Swylke.
Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, s. suit.
Swafres, v. 3 s. staggerers, 3970. Sc. swecer, to walk feebly. Jamies-
son.
Swalters, v. 3 s. (?) 3924.
Swange, s. loins, 1129.
Swangene, v. pret. pl. swung, 2146.
Swanke, v. pret. toiled, 2961, 3361.
Swape, s. blow, stroke, 314.
Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, v. 3 s. smites, strikes; pl.
swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465; pret. swappede, 1795.
Swarthe, s. sward, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960.
Swathes, s. pl. 2508.
Swayne, s. 3360.
Swefene, s. dream, 812; pl. swefennyrs, 3228.
Swefynge, s. dreaming, 759.
Swelte, v. die, 716, 813; 3 s. sweltes, 2961, fants, 3069; pl.
sweltez, 1466; pret. swelte, 2982; i. p. sweltand, 2146, sweltande,
1465.
Sweppe, p.p. swept, 2508.
Swerde, s. sword, 47, 715; pl. swerddez, 1253, suerddes, 314.
Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, s. life.
Swetly, 3970, Swottly, 1297, adv. sweetly.
Sweyftly, adv. swiftly, 3703.
Sweys, v. 3 s. sways, 57; pl. 1467, 3676, 4273.
Swiche. See Swylke.
Swoge, s. swaying motion, 759.
Swoge, s. swoon, 1467.
Swoune, s. whirr, 1127.
Swounes, v. 3 s. swoons, 1127; i. p. swouuande, 1407, 2960.
Swowynges, s. sound, 931.
Swyer, s. squire, 2959, 3703.
Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, v. pret. deceived.
Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 907, 1031, Sych, 76, 220, adj. such.
Swym, s. swoon, 4246.
Swynge, s. swing, 3360, 3676, 4223.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Swyre-bane</td>
<td>s. neckbone</td>
<td>2959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swythe (adv.)</td>
<td>quickly, swiftly</td>
<td>185, 409, 715, very, 1949; as swythe = immediately, 813.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sybb, Sybbe</td>
<td>See Sibb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sybredyne (s.) kindred</td>
<td></td>
<td>691, 4145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syche (See Swylke)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sydlyngs (adv.) sidelong</td>
<td>ways</td>
<td>1039, 1043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sydys (s. pl.) sides</td>
<td></td>
<td>2148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syne (See Syne)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syghande (3794, Sygheande, 3891, i. p. sighing)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syland, Sylande (3794)</td>
<td>i. p. flowing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syluerene (adj.) silvern</td>
<td>made of silver</td>
<td>1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sylure (s.) canopy</td>
<td></td>
<td>3194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symple (adj.) mean</td>
<td>684, few</td>
<td>967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syne, s. sin</td>
<td>3315, 3986</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syene, 4053, Synne, 3435, ade. afterwards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synechalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, s. seneschal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syngere (s. boar)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syngne, s. sign</td>
<td></td>
<td>3075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syngulere (adj. single)</td>
<td>826</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synkande, i. p. sinking</td>
<td></td>
<td>3705</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synne (See Syne)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syr, Syre (See Sir)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, s. grief, sorrow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Sythyne, 56, 169, Šethene, 1977, ade. afterwards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sythis, s. pl. times</td>
<td></td>
<td>2216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syttyne, p.p. sat</td>
<td></td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabylle (s. table)</td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachementez, s. pl. attachments</td>
<td></td>
<td>1568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachescesede (?)</td>
<td></td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, s. tackle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, adj. taught, trained</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tak, v. take, 144; take, 307, proceed, go; 3 s. tase, 1890, takes; pl. tas, 3203; pret. tuke, 328, 1359, 2242; p.p. takyne, 73, gone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tale, s. number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talhes, v. 3 s. falters, 2581. Du. Talmen, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense. Seeowell’s Dictionary.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talounez, s. pl. talons, claws, 800.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Targe, s. round shield; pl. targez, 732. The targe was often emblazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarsse, s. kind of cloth, 3189.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarye, v. tarry, 1703.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tas, Tase. See Tak.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tauernez, s. pl. taverns, 1568.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tawghte. See Taghte.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temene, v. 3 s. empties, 1801.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperalle, s. 2409.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tempeste, v. 2408.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporaltee, s. 1570.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tende, adj. tenth, 73.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tene = ten, 1421.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tene, s. injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956. A.S. teona.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenefulle, adj. harmful, grievous, 4280.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenefully, adv. grievously, 272, 2345.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tente, s. heed, attention, 3586, 4094.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tentlyly, *adv.* heedfully, attentively, 3618.
Teraunt, *s.* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842; *pl.* tereauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tirauntez, 2408.
Terez, *v.* 3 *s.* tears, 800; *pl.* terez, 1143.
Teris, 3886, Terys, 3794, *s.* *pl.* tears.
Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron.* *n.* *pl.*; *gen.* thaire, 1143, 1396, their, 13, 20, thiere, 160, 3191, thire, 19; *obj.* thaim, 396, thame, 1185, them, 1856, thyme, 1889.
Thar, 881, Thare, 60, 102, *adv.* thare = where, 59, 1185.
Thare-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028.
Thare-by, 1186, *adv.* there, hereby, beside.
Thare-fore, *adv.* therefore, 2042.
Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj.* those.
Thedyre, *adv.* thither, 2488.
Thee, *s.* thigh, 1046; *pl.* theese, 1100.
Theefe, *s.* thief, 1150.
Thees, Theis, Theise. *See This.
Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj.* than.
Ther, *adv.* there, 884; where, 1131, 1219; there = where, 476.
Ther-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339.
Ther-to, *adv.* thereto, also, 181.
Ther-vndyre, *adv.* under it, 1156.

Thes. *See This.
Thethene, *adv.* thence, 4345.
Theves, *s.* *pl.* virtues, good qualities, 21.
Theyne = thine, 3403.
Theys. *See This.
Thie = thee, 104.
Thiere, Thire. *See Thai.
Thies, Thiese. *See This.
Thikkke, *s.* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755; *pl.* thykkys, 2216.
Thir, Thire. *See This.
Thirled, Thirleze. *See Thyrle.
This, *pron.* or *adj.* 410; *pl.* thees, 154, 167, theies, 1604, theise, 2044, thes, 48, 1556, theys, 2810, thies, 104, 264, theis, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thir, 1161, 1164, thire, 993.
Thof. *See Thoghe.
Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2658, *conj.* though.
Thoghte. *See Thynkes.
Thole, *v.* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150.
Thos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron.* those.
Thorowe, Thorughe. *See Thurghe.
Thorowely, *adv.* thoroughly, 3294.
Thorowowte, *prep.* throughout, right through, 2170, 2956.
Thosande, 1400, Thosandde, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s.* thousand.
Thourhe. *See Thurghe.
Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj.* vehement, eager; *superl.* thraeste, 3756.
Thrange, *s.* throng, 2217.
Thrawe, *s.* thrue, pang, 1150.
Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v.* pret. strove.
Thrette, v. threaten, 3295; 3 s. thretys, 249.
Thretty, adj. thirty, 3295.
Thristis, v. pl. thrust, 3755.
Throly, adv. vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332.
Throo, adv. vehement, 3294.
Throstilles, s. pl. throstles, 930.
Throwene, p.p. thrown, 3694.
Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte. See Thurghe.
Thryftye, adj. 317.
Thrygyes, v. 3 s. presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217.
Thrystez, v. 3 s. thrusts, 1151.
Thryttene, adj. thirteen, 2216.
Thurghe-girde, p.p. smitten through, 1461.
Thurysse, s. giant, 1100. A.S. thyrs.
Thykkys. See Thikke.
Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thyknkys, 2440, impers. v. seems; seems good, 996; pret. thoughte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230.
Thyrle, v. pierce, 1413; 3 s. thirllez, 2167; pret. thillede, 1558, 3890; p.p. thyrllede, 2238, 2688.
Thyzandez. See Tydandis.
Tide, s. time, 3902; pl. tydez, 753.
Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, prep. to.
Tiltine, v. pl. tilt, topple, 1144.
Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 714, Tytte, 1891, 2553, adv. quickly; alls tite = as quickly, at once, immediately.
Tittez, v. 3 s. makes totter, 1801.
To, adv. too, 957, 1200.
To, conj. till, 3182.
To-briste, v. burst asunder, 3982.
To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, adv. together.
Togers, s. pl. clothes, 178.
Toges, s. pl. togas, 3189.
Toile, s. tussle, broil, 1802. Sc. tuilie.
Tolle, s. customs, 1568.
Toowris, s. pl. (?l tool-makers, 3618.
To-morne, adv. to-morrow, 1587.
Tonges, s. pl. tongues (of a dragon’s tail), 821.
Toppe, s. top, 1144, head, 801.
Toppe-castelles, s. pl. 3616.
To-rattys, v. pl. rend asunder, 2235.
Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tournere, 2582, s. harm, mischief.
Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, v. 3 s. turns; pret. tornede, 3203, tournede, 1052.
To-ruscheez, v. pl. dash asunder, 1428.
To-stonayede, utterly stunned, 1436.
Tother, adj. other, 234, 3283.
The first t is really part of the article, for the tother = that other, just as the tone = that one.
Tourre, s. tower, 245, 1890; pl. toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towerres, 3153.
Tourfere. See Torfere.
Towche, v. touch, 2067, concern, tell; 3 s. towhcez, 800, 1570, 1591; pret. towchede, 770, towchide, 841; i. p. towchande, 263.
Towne, adj. trained, 178.
To-wrythes, v. 3 s. writhes, 3920.
Towyne, v. pl. draw, haul, 3655.
Toylez, 732, Toyelys, 3616, s. pl. (? ) gear, tools.
Traise, v. 3 s. draws, 1629.
Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976, adv. safely, securely.
Traistez. See Trayst.
Trappede, p.p. covered with trappings, 1757, 2150.
Trauaillede, p.p. who have toiled, 1947.
Trauaylande, 1684, Trauelande, 1630, i. p. travelling.
Trauayle, s. labour, 3566.
Trayne, v. stratagem, 1630, 3901, 4192.
Trayne, s. stratagem, 1630, 3901, 4192.
Trays, s. trace, track, 4055.
Trayste, v. trust, 669; 3 s. traistez, 1987, 2870; pret. traystede, 1955, 3569.
Traystely. See Traistely.
Traytoure, s. traitor, 2173, 4055.
Treiben, v. annoint; i. p. trente, 3900; 3 s. trente, 3566.
Trebute, 114, 2611, Trebutte, 2344, Tribute, 271, Tributte, 2357, s.
Tremlande, i. p. trembling, 3899.
Trenchande, adj. trenchant, sharp, 3856.
Tresone, s. treason, treachery, 1629, 2017.
Tresoure, s. treasure, 668, 886, 991.
Trete, s. (l) row, 3655.
Trew, 263, 992, Trew, 879, 2932, s. truce.
Trewage, s. tribute, 2358.
Trew, adj. true, 16.
Trewghe. See Trewthe.
Trewly, adv. truly, 2610.
Trewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929, s. truth.
Treyntis (l), 4056.
Trine. See Tryne.
Trippe, v. trip, move lightly, 3713.
Trisene, v. pl. trice (nautical term), 832.
Tristily, 407, Trystily, 2357, adv. trustily, faithfully.
Tristy, 731, 1262, Tristy, 832, adv. confidently, boldly
Trofe, 2932, Trofulle, 1702, v. trifle; i. p. trofelande, 1683.
Trome, v. troop, 3592. A.S. truma, a troop.
Trumpese, adj. having trumpets, 3713.
Trompes, 1757, Tromppex, 1484, 1947, Troumpes, 4107, Troumpex, 1702, Trom邓pex, 832, s. pl. trumpets.
Trouflynge, s. trifling, 114.
Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe, 1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, s. troth, fidelity; pl. trowhes, 2325.
Trov, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693, v. believe.
Trouwe. See Trouthe.
Troumpynge, s. trumpeting, 3191.
Trufles, s. pi. trifles, 89.
Troupede, v. pret. trumpeted, 407.
Trumppez. See Trompes.
Trusselle, s. packs, bundles, 3655.
Trymblyde, v. pret. trembled, 270.
Tryne, v. go, proceed; trine, 1757; 3 s. trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055, trynnys, 3901; (? pret. pl. tryne, 3192; i. p. trynande, 4189.
Trystily. See Tristily.
Trystly. See Tristly.
Tuke. See Tak.
Tumbellez, v. pl. tumble, 1143.
Tunge, s. tongue, 1250, 1891.
Turmenttez, v. 2 s. tormentest, 1954; 3 s. turmentez, 3153.
Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791, s. pl. teeth.
Twa, adj. two, 171, 335.
Twys, adv. twice, 716.
Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands, 264, Thyandez, 1567, s. pl. tiddings.
Tyde, v. betide, happen, 879; 3 s. tyddes, 1703; p.p. tydd, 3654, tydde, 3451.
Tydez. See Tide.
Tykes, s. pl. dogs, 3642, 4258.
Tylle. See Til.
Tymbyrde, p.p. built, devised, 3742.
Tymedec, v. pret. happened, 3150.
Tyrauntly, adv. like a tyrant, 271.
Tyseaday, s. Tuesday, 3900.
Tyte, Tytt. See Tite.
Tythdands. See Tydandis.
Valyaunt, adj. valiant, 2093.
Vassallage, s. service, 2048.
Vawewarde, s. vanguard, 1981.
Velany, s. villany, 298, 326.
Venemows. See Venemys.
Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124, adj. venomous.
Venge, v. avenge, 867; p.p. vengede, 298, 2264.
Ventelde, v. pret. spread sail to the wind, 737.
Venymmos. See Venemus.
Vernacle, s. a handkerchief said to have the print of Christ's face upon it, 297, 307.
Vernage, s. a kind of drink, 204, 3166.
Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308, adv. truly.
Verrede, p.p. spotted, 2573.
Vertely, adv. readily, 3168.
Vertous, Vertouous. See Vertouse.
Vertue, s. virtue, 215, 4297.
Vertouous, 204, Vertuus, 297.
Vertous, 3055, Vertous, 5, adj. virtuous.
Vescounte, Vescounte. See Viscounte.
Vesage, s. visage, 137, 3055.
Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, s. visor.
Vesettez, v. 3 s. visits, 1726.
Vesselle, s. 3071.
Vestoure, s. clothing, 3071.
Vetaile, s. victuals, 3071.
Vetaile, v. victual, 353; 3 s. vetailles, 3165.
Viage, s. journey, expedition, 2037, 2493.
Vicc, s. fault, defect, 911.
Vicounte, 3167, Viscounnte, 2047, Vescounte, 2024, Vescounnte, 1984, Vyscounnte, 2050, s.
Visez, v. 3 s. purposes, 3167.
Vmbeclappes, v. 3 s. embraces, 1779.
Vmbelegrippys, v. 3 s. grasps, 3758; pret. vmbelegrippede, 3944.
Vmbelappes, v. 3 s. surrounds, 1819; pret. vmbylappede, 3785.
Vmbere, s. part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 943, 2247, 3952.
Vn-abaiste, adj. unabashed, not cast down, 1378.
Vmblysside, adj. unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962.
Vmblythely, adv. sadly, 1434.
Vmbrydilles, v. pi. unbiidle, 2509.
Vnclede, p.p. unclothed, 4202.
Vncouere, v. uncover, 2710; pret. vncouerde, 739.
Vncowthe, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, adj. unknown, strange.
Vncowpylle, v. uncouple, 3999.
Vndir-takande, i. p. enterprising, 2723.
Vndone, p.p. 1722, 3752, 3966.
Vndone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, s.
Vndyrtakynge, s. 3187.
Vne-made, adj. unmade, 2507.
Vnfayre, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, adv. badly, ill, unpleasantly.
Vnfaye, adj. unharmed, sound, 2796.
Vnfers, adj. unfierce, tame, 4122.
Vnfondyde, adj. untried, 2485.
Vnfraystede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, adj. untried.
Vnfreyly, adv. (?) ignobly, 780.
Vnlordly, adv. 1313; adv. 1267.
Vnmete, adj. unmeet, 4070.
Vnquellyde, adj. unskilled, 3810.
Vnrekene, adj. (?) unpleasant, 3754.
Vnresonable, adj. 3452.

Vnryghttwyslye, adv. unrighteously, 329.
Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1457, 4140, adj.
Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtyly, 1847, adv.
Vnsakyryly, adv. unsafely, 966.
Vnsenly, adv. unseemliness, 1044.
Vnsene, adj. unseen, 3114.
Vnslely, adv. unskillfully, clumsily, 979.
Vnsownde, adj. 3290, 3931, 3942.
Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparily, 235, adv. unsparingly.
Vntenderly, 1144, Vntendirly, 2575, adv.
Vntrewe, adj. untrue, faithless, 4227.
Vntrewely, adv. dishonestly, 886.
Vnnenquiste, adj. unvanquished, 2049.
Vnwyrmmyde, adj. unspotted, spotless, 3801.
Vnwyrryly, adv. unwisely, 3802.
Vnwyrryly, adv. unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562.
Vnwyse, adj. 3817.
Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2094, v. pass out, pass away; 3 s. voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974; pl. voydez, quit, 3168.
Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, s. mien. Lat. vultus.
Voyde, adj. empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911.
Voyde, Voydes, Voydez. See Voide.
Vpbrayde, v. 1930.
Vpceynes, s. pl. (?) 3675.
Vpe = up, 1119, 1877.
Vse, v. practise, 1843.
Vtas, s. 625. "The eighth day, or the space of eight days, after any festival." Halliwell.
Vttere, adv. further out, 2438.
Viters, v. 3 s. dismisses, 418.
Vttirly, adv. 3966.
Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, s. screw. Crossbows were drawn back by means of a screw.

Wache, v. watch, 547; inf. wacchen, 613; p.p. wachede, 1613.
Wache, s. watch, 2499; pl. wacches, 1356.
Wafulle, adj. woeful, sorrowful, 950, 955.
Wagande, i. p. wagging, waving, 3660.

Wage, s. pay, 302.
Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615, v. hire, engage; wage, stake, 2967.
Wagene, v. wager, 2445.
Waknez, 806, v. 3 s. awakes; wakens, 3562; pret. wakenyde, awoke, 3392.
Walde, v. pret. would, 339, 342, wouldest, 870, 1035.
Wale, s. gunwale, 740.
Wale, v. choose, 181.
Wale, adj. choice, 2148.
Wale, adj. eddying, surging, 741, 763.
Walkande, i. p. walking, 762, 3479.
Walkyne, s. welkin, sky, 787.
Walle, s. wave, 493. Ger. welle.
Walopande, i. p. galloping, 2147, 2827.
Walowes, v. pl. wallow, roll, 1142; pret. walewede, 3838.
Walsche, adj. Welsh, 320, 2044.
Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wandredthe, 384, s. woe, sorrow.

Wandsomdly, adv. (?) sorrowfully, 4012.
Wandyrs, v. 3 s. wanders, 798; i. p. wanderande, 763.
Wane, adj. wan, dusky, dark, 492. A.S. wan.
Wane. See Wyne.
Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, s. weapon; pl. wapynez, 2137, wapyns, 312.
War. See Ware.
Warantizez, s.pl. guarantees, 1614.
Warlane, 3523, Wardayne, 650, 2494, s. warden.
Warde, s. ward, 2480, custody, 1613.
Wardrop, 4203, Wardrobe, 901, 2622, s. wardrobe.

Ware = where, 1054.
Ware, v. pret. pl. were, 18, 177; subj. pret. 1 s. ware, 2647; 2 s. ware, 964; 3 s. ware, 73, war, 976; pl. ware.
Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045, adj. wary, cautious, aware. A.S. wcér.
Warely, adv. cautiously, 4026.
Waresche, v. be healed, recover, 2186.

Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, v. throw, cast; pl. warpes, 2746; warpes away = make off; pret. warpe, 901.

War, v. pret. pl. were, 1415.
Warlowne, s. desert place, wilderness, 3233. See Wasturne in Alliterative Poems, B. 1674. A.S. wésten.

Wate. See Wiet.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Wathe, s. way, path, 3233. See Wope in Alliterative Poems, A. 151. A.S. wiðu.
Wathe, s. harm, hurt, 2668. See Wope in Alliterative Poems, B. 855.
Wathely, adv. badly, 2090, 2186.
Watte. See Wiet.
Watyre, s. water, 1299, 1358.
Watyre-mene, s. pl. mariners, 741.
Watyre, s. 2224.
Wawarde, s. vanguard, 1767. See Avanttwarde.
Wawhte, (?) 3480.
Waxe, v. grow, 4322.
Wayfare, s. course, 1797.
Wayfe, v. wander, stray, 960.
Waykly, adv. weakly, 697.
Weches, s. pi. witches, 613.
Wedde, p.p. wedded, 700.
Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500, Wedys, 2429, s. pl. weeds, 189.
Wedirwyns. See Wyderwyne.
Wedowe, s. widow, 950, 4285; pl. wedewes, 3154.
Weende. See Wene.
Weife. See Wif.
Weilde. See Welde.
Weile. See Wele.
Weisely. See Wyesly.
Wekyrly, adv. watchfully; hence, in a lively manner, briskly, 2104. A.S. wacorclice, watchfully.
Welde, 3090, Weilde, 650, v. rule; possess, 2967.
Wele, s. riches, wealth, 401, 653, weal, 4100.
Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile, 1788, adv. well.
Welle, s. spring, well, 540, 882.
Welle, v. spring up, bubble up, boil; 3 s. wellys, flows, 3819; pret. wellyde, 3377; p.p. wellyde, boiled, 1736.
Welte, v. pret. overturned, 3152.
Welters, 1140, Welterys, 890, v. 3 s. rolls; pl. welters, 1142; i. p. wellerande, 2147.
Welthes, s. pl. 3157.
Wende. See Wene.
Wende, 302, 1299, Weende, 2445, 2493, v. go; 2 s. wendes, 614, wendez, 701, wendes, 2185; pret. went, 1301.
Wene, v. think, suppose; 2 s. wenes, 1806, wenez, 963; pret. wende, 2121.
Wenges, 768, Wengez, 819, 926, s. pl. wings.
Wepede, v. pret. wept, 1920; i. wepand, 2679, 3561.
Werdes, 3889, Werades, 385, s. pl. fates, destinies
Werdez. See Werlde.
Were, adv. where, 3692.
Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 510, 621, s. war.
Werdes. See Werdes.
Weres = veers (?), 3054.
Weries. See Wery, v.
Werke, s. work; pl. werkes, 3, 19.
Werkkes, v. 3 s. aches, 2689; i. werkand, 1797, 2148.
Werlaughe. See Warlawe.
Werlde, s. world, 5, 708; gen. sg. werdez, 674.
Werpe. See Warpe.
Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, v. make war, war upon; pl. werrayes, 3447; pret. werrayede, 2045, 2215; i. p. werrayande, 2089, werreyand, 2599.
Werre. See Were.
Werryde, *v. pret.* wore, 3872; *p.p.* werede, worn, 2930.

Wery, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286, *v. curse; 3 s. weries, 3888; *p.p.* weryd, 959.

Wery, *adj.* weary, 492, 3392.


Wesce, *v. pret.* washed, 231; *p.p.* wescene, 1301.

Wetene, Wette. *See Wiet.

Wette, *v. pret.* wetted, 2332.

Weyffe. *See Wif.

Weyndez, Weyndez. *See Wende.

Weyne = wine, *s.* 161.

Weyesse. *See Wiese.

Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770, *pron.* whom.

Whanne. *See Wyne.

Whare, *adv.* where, 107, 302.

Whare = were, 174, 529.

Whas = was, 76, 634.

Whayme. *See Whame.


Whedyre, *conj.* whether, 1717.

Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv.* when.

Whethire, *pron.* which (of two), 350.

Whilde = wild, *adj.* 3232, 3446.

Whilke, *pron.* which, 4194.

Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills, 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597, *conj.* whilst; whilles, 1107, whills, 3908, whylles, 2132, 2511, until.

Whilome, *adv.* sometimes, 1145.

Whitte = white, *adj.* 3260.

Whoo = who, 1322.

Whydrewyns. *See Wyderwyne.

Whyeseste. *See Wiese.

Whynne, why—not, 703. Whynne myghte I dye = O that I might die!

Wieffe. *See Wif.

Wielde, *s.* (?) 2689.

Wiese, 3035, Weyssse, 2514, Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wysesse, 2745, *adj.* wise; *superl.* wyseste, 290, wysestest, 532.

Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt, 958, *v. know, know of; 1 s. wate, 4203, watte, 533, 2224; 2 s. wate, 3393, watte, 692, 3549; *p.p.* wotte (*properly a sg. form*), 4100; *pret.* wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wiste, 339, 891; *p.p.* wetene, 2966, wytene, 869.


Wightenez. *See Wyghtnesse.

Wile, *v.* get away by stealth, 3908.

Wilfully, *adv.* 151, 3835.

Wille, *s.* wildness, madness, 3836.


Wilne, *v.* desire; 2 *s.* wilnez, 2224, wilnez, 3479, wyhnz, 961; 3 *s.* wylnez, 384. *A.S. wilmian*.

Wirche. *See Wirke.

Wirchipe, 2187, Wyrchipe, 10, Wyrichipe, 150, *s.* honour; *pl.* wyrichippis, 22.


Wirchipfulle, 1356, 2231, Wyrichipfulle, 333, 650, *adj.* worshipful, honourable.

Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyreke, 149, Wirche, 3008, Wyreche, 130, 1030, 1384, *v.* work, perform, do; 2 *s.* wyrkkes, 2432; 3 *s.* wyrkez, 1267, wyrkkes, 1465; *p.p.* wyrkede, 663; *pret.* wroghte, 1790; *pret. pl.* wroghtenc, 2137; *p.p.* wroghte, 2622, 3495.

Wist, Wiste. *See Wiet.

With-owtene, 997, With-owttyne, 114, 139, Wythowttyne, 225, 491, prep. without; except, 849.
Withstondene, v. pl. withstand, 1747; p.p. 1926.
With-thy, conj. provided, on condition, 2587, 2591.
Wythowttyne, 225, 491.
prep, without, except, 849.
Withstondene, v. pi. withstand, 1747; p.p. 1926.
With-thy, conj. provided, on condition, 2587, 2591.
Witter, v. certify, assure, 1239.
Witterly, 3549, Wyttely, 324, adv. plainly, clearly, certainly.
"Wlonke, adj. proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338.
A.S. wlonc.
Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, s. wood; pl. woddez, 1974.
A.S. wudu.
Wode, adj. mad, raging, 3837.
A.S. wod.
Wodely, adv. madly, 2827.
Wodewyse, adv. madly, 3817.
Wokes, s. pi. weeks, 354.
A.S. wuce.
Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, v. pret. would.
See Walde.
Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, s. pl. wolves.
Wolf-heued, s. wolf’s head, 1093.
Wombe, s. belly, 768. A.S. wamb.
Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, v. hesitate; 3 s. wondis, 3333. A.S. wandian, to fear, be awe-struck.
Wonde, s. wound; pl. wondes, 1469, 2148.
Wonde, v. wound; 3 s. wondes, 2090; pret. wondide, 2231; p.p. wondede, 1853, wondedde, 1558, wondyde, 1415, 1434.
Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, adv. wonderfully.
Wondsome, s. misery, 3836.
Wondyre, s. 1166, 1342; adv. 2515.
Wone, s. dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204.
Wonene. See Wyne.
Wonne, v. dwell, 3910; 3 s. wonnys, 3551.
Wonne, Wonene, Wonnyne. See Wyne.
Wonnynges, s. pl. dwellings, habitations, 3157.
Wonydez, s. pl. sorrow, grief, 707. See Wondrethe.
Woo, s. woe, 2684, 3393.
Woonde. See Wonde.
Worde, v. 3393.
Worme, s. reptile, 796, 798.
Worows, v. 3 s. worries, kills, 958.
Worthe, v. become, be, 959 992, 1306.
Wortheliche, 2669, Worthilyche, 695, Worthily, 2191, adj. worthy.
Worthethy = worthy, 1302.
Worthily, 2231, Worthlyye, 2547, adv.
Wotte. See Wiet.
Wraite, v. pret. wrote, 3904.
Wrakfulle, adj. vengeful, 3818.
Wrange, adj. wrong, left, 1480.
Wraythe. See Wrythe.
Wrecche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, s. wretch; pl. wrecches, 1446.
Wrecchyde, adj. wretched, 5.
Wrek, s. vengeance, 3839.
Wrek, v. avenge, 321, 385; 3 s. wrekes, 2213; inf. wrekene, 151; p.p. wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 225.
Wreth, s. wrath, 151, 321, 385.
Wreth, s. fold, wrath, 1093.
Wrethide, v. pret. angered, 2191.
Wriche. See Wrecche.
Wristles. See Wyrstille.
Wroghte, Wroghtene. See Wirke.
Wrokene, Wrokyne. See Wreke.
Wrothely, adv. fiercely, 1141, 1450, 2214.
Wrotherayle, s. misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154.

Wryche. See Wreche.


Wyrstille, v. wrestle, 1141; 3 s. wriesteles, 890.

Wrythe, v. twist, writhe, turn about, 4322; wrythes, 1920, 2679.

"Wrystille, v. wrestle, 1141; s. wristeles, 890.

"VVrythe, v. twist, writhe, turn about, 4322; wrythes, 1920, 2679.

Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, s. man, person; pl. wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysses, 685. A.S. wiga, warrior; wig, war.

Wyederwyne, s. adversary, 2045; pl. wedirwyns, 3818, wedirwynes, 3834, wydyrewyns, 2215. A.S. wiferwina.

Wye, v. weigh (anchor), 740.

Wyefe, Wyf, Wyfe, WyfFe. See Wif.

Wyes, Wyese. See Wy.

Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse. See Wiese.

Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2589, adv. wisely.

Wyghte, s. wight, man, person, 959.

Wyghte, adj. vigorous, strong, 1140; comp. wyghttere, 964; superl. wyghtest, 290, 336, 532.

Wyghtly, adv. vigorously, 553, 740.

Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, s. vigour, strength.

Wykkyde, adj. evil, 3232.

Wylde, s. wild animals, 181, 657. Wylde fyre, s. 797.

Wylez, s. pl. wiles, 1504.

Wylily, adv. in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746.

Wylnez. See Wylne.

Wynche, v. wink, wince, 2104.

Wyndowes, s. pl. some part of a helmet, probably the windhole or aventail, 911.

Wyne, v. win, gain, conquer; winne, 516; wyne to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908; wyne awaye, get away, 468; pret. wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22; p.p. wonnene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805.

Wynly, adv. pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338.

Wynlyche, adj. pleasant, 181.

Wyrche. See Wirke.

Wyrchipe, Wyrchipfulle, &c. See Wirchipe, &c.

Wyrke, Wyrkkes. See Wirke.

Wysse, v. direct, guide, teach, 9, 813; s. wysse, governs, 671.

Wysse. See Wy.

Wyste, Wyt, Wytene. See Wiet.

Wythowttyne. See With-owtene.

Wythsytte, v. resist, 104.

Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, s. wit.

Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, s. wit.

Wytterly. See Witterly.

Yare, 1901. Read Thare.

Yche, Ylke. See Ilke.

Ynewe, Ynowe. See Inowe.

Yrne. See Irene.

Yschewes, v. 3 s. issues, 610.

Ythez, s. pl. waves, 741, 747, 763.

3a, adv. yea, 993, 1033.

3aldsones, s. pl. (?), 3809.

3alowere, adj. comp. yellower, 3283.

3apely, adv. quickly, 1502.

3ates, 2471, 3atcz, 2039, s. pl. gates.

3e, pron. ye, 12, 226.

3ee, 3911. Perhaps a mistake for 3exes, sobbs. A.S. giscian, to sob.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

3effe, conj. if, 2859.
3elde, v. to yield, 1502; 3 s. 
3eldes, 3809; p.p. 3oldene, 2334, 
2482.
3eldene, p.p. 1870. Probably a 

mistake for '3oldene.'
3eme, v. keep, guard; 3 s. 3emes, 
430, 3emez, 938; pl. 3emes, 647.
3erde, s. yard, 3254, 3280.
3ere, s. year, 522, 552.
3ernys, (?) laments, 3911. A.S. 
gyrman, to roar.
3erne, v. yearn, desire, lust after ;
2 s. 3ernes, 1502; 3 s. 3ernes, 
1032; p.p. 3ernede, 2343.
3erne, adv. earnestly, eagerly,
1794, 3325, 4189.
3ef, 340, 3ife, 1502, 3iff, 104, 3iffe, 
4153, conj. if.

3if, 1567, 3ife, 1668, 3iffe, 2323, 
v. give.
3is, 2324, 3ise, 2585, adv. yes.
3it, 1128, 3itt, 1140, 3itte, 2109, 
yet.
3ofe, 1938, 2854. Read 'thofe,' 
though.
3oldene. See 3elde.
3ole, s. Yule, 2628.
3olke, s. yolk, 3283.
3omane, s. yeoman, 2628.
3on, 2935, 3one, 299, 336, 341, 
adj. you.
3ondire, 3809, 3ondyr, 2720, adv. 
yonder.
3our, 95, 153, 222, 3owre, 630, 
683, pron. your.
3ow, 15, 16, 3owe, 1266, pron. you.